



Universiteit  
Leiden  
The Netherlands

## The morpho-syntax of aspect in Xiāng Chinese

Lu, M.

### Citation

Lu, M. (2017, September 28). *The morpho-syntax of aspect in Xiāng Chinese*. LOT, Utrecht.  
Retrieved from <https://hdl.handle.net/1887/57993>

Version: Not Applicable (or Unknown)

License: [Licence agreement concerning inclusion of doctoral thesis in the Institutional Repository of the University of Leiden](#)

Downloaded from: <https://hdl.handle.net/1887/57993>

**Note:** To cite this publication please use the final published version (if applicable).

Cover Page



Universiteit Leiden



The handle <http://hdl.handle.net/1887/57993> holds various files of this Leiden University dissertation

**Author:** Lu, M.

**Title:** The morpho-syntax of aspect in Xiāng Chinese

**Issue Date:** 2017-09-28

**THE MORPHO-SYNTAX OF ASPECT IN  
XIĀNG CHINESE**

Published by  
LOT  
Trans 10  
3512 JK Utrecht  
The Netherlands

phone: +31 30 253 6111

e-mail: [lot@uu.nl](mailto:lot@uu.nl)

<http://www.lotschool.nl>

ISBN: 978-94-6093-249-6

NUR 616

Copyright © 2017: Lu Man. All rights reserved.

**THE MORPHO-SYNTAX OF ASPECT  
IN XIĀNG CHINESE**

PROEFSCHRIFT

TER VERKRIJGING VAN  
DE GRAAD VAN DOCTOR AAN DE UNIVERSITEIT LEIDEN  
OP GEZAG VAN DE RECTOR MAGNIFICUS PROF. MR. C.J.J.M. STOLKER,  
VOLGENS HET BESLUIT VAN HET COLLEGE VOOR PROMOTIES,  
TE VERDEDIGEN OP DONDERDAG 28 SEPTEMBER 2017  
KLOKKE 13:45

DOOR

MAN LU

GEBOREN TE YUEYANG, CHINA  
IN 1969

Promotor: Prof. dr. R.P.E. Sybesma

Co-promotor: Dr. A.K. Lipták

Promotiecommissie:

Prof. dr. J.S. Doetjes

Prof. dr. D. Hole (Universit ä Stuttgart)

Dr. H. Sun (Universit éde Picardie Jules Verne, Amiens)

## Table of Contents

Key to abbreviations	IX
Acknowledgements	XI
Chapter 1. Introduction	1
1.1 Basic introduction	1
1.1.1 The language, its speakers and its major properties	1
1.1.2 Previous linguistic studies on Xiāng	7
1.1.3 Aim of the dissertation	7
1.2 Theoretical background	9
1.2.1 Tense in Mandarin	10
1.2.2 Aspect	27
1.2.3 Viewpoint aspect in Mandarin	28
1.2.4 Situation aspect: semantics and syntax	33
1.2.5 Inner aspect in Mandarin	35
1.2.6 Telicity in Mandarin	42
1.2.7 Summary of Chapter 1	47
1.3 Overview of the thesis	48
1.4 Summary of the following chapters	50
Chapter 2. V + $ta^{21}$	53
2.1 Introduction	53
2.2 $ta^{21}$ as a perfective marker and/or a progressive marker	57
2.2.1 $ta^{21}$ as a perfective marker	57
2.2.2 $ta^{21}$ as a progressive marker	59
2.2.2.1 $ta^{21}$ with negation	59
2.2.2.2 $ta^{21}$ with manner adverbials	61
2.2.2.3 $ta^{21}$ with the progressive marker $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$	63
2.2.2.4 $ta^{21}$ with sentence final $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$	66
2.2.3 $ta^{21}$ , a perfective or a durative marker: $ta^{21}$ with <i>holding</i> verbs	67
2.2.4 Summary	69
2.3 Literature introduction	70
2.3.1 $ta^{21}$ as a completive or a progressive/durative marker—a case of overlap	70
2.3.2 $ta^{21}$ as a "transition" marker	72

## Table of Contents

2.3.3	Summary	73
2.4	Critics of earlier accounts	73
2.4.1	"Dynamicity" is not relevant to $ta^{21}$	73
2.4.2	$ta^{21}$ is not a "transition" marker	77
2.4.3	Intermezzo: $ta^{21}$ as a marker of "posttime"	78
2.4.4	Summary	82
2.5	$ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ and $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$	83
2.5.1	$ta^{21}$ with negation	84
2.5.2	$ta^{21}$ with adverbial modifiers	86
2.5.3	$ta^{21}$ with pre-verbal and sentence final $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$	87
2.5.4	Summary	89
2.6	Interpreting sentence final $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$	89
2.6.1	Is sentence final $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ a mood particle?	89
2.6.2	Sentence final $tsai^{21}ko^{24} \neq$ preverbal $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$	91
2.6.3	Sentence final $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ : a reading of present tense	95
2.6.4	Summary	102
2.7	Distinguishing two $ta^{21}$ s	102
2.7.1	Event argument licensing, $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ and $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$	104
2.7.2	Tense anchoring in Mandarin Chinese	104
2.7.3	Back to Chángshā	108
2.7.4	$ta^{21}$ with the progressive aspect	113
2.7.5	$ta^{21}$ with negation and other licensors	114
2.8	Summary of chapter 2	115
Chapter 3.	V+ $ka^{41}$	119
3.1	Introduction	119
3.2	The data	122
3.2.1	$ka^{41}$ as obligatory	122
3.2.1.1	$ka^{41}$ in achievements	123
3.2.1.2	$ka^{41}$ in stative predicates expressing change-of-state	125
3.2.1.3	$ka^{41}$ in BA-sentences	126
3.2.2	Optional $ka^{41}$	130
3.2.2.1	$ka^{41}$ in resultative constructions	130
3.2.2.2	$ka^{41}$ with [V+quantized+object]	131
3.2.3	Omission/insertion of $ka^{41}$ leads to different meaning	132

## Table of Contents

3.2.3.1	<i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> with [V+bare noun object]	133
3.2.3.2	<i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> with [V+definite noun object] (i.e., with a demonstrative)	134
3.2.4	Summary	136
3.3	Overview of the existing literature	137
3.3.1	<i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> as a perfective marker	137
3.3.2	<i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> as an "Extended Event Boundary" marker	139
3.3.3	Summary	143
3.4	Literature evaluation	143
3.4.1	<i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> is not a perfective marker	143
3.4.2	<i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> is not an "Extended Event Boundary" marker	148
3.4.3	Summary	149
3.5	Interpreting <i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> : <i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> doubles an endpoint	149
3.5.1	Interpreting <i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> in achievements	149
3.5.2	Interpreting <i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> in stative predicates	154
3.5.3	Interpreting <i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> in the <i>BA</i> -constructions	164
3.5.4	Interpreting <i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> in [V+bare/definite noun object] sentences	171
3.5.5	Summary	177
3.6	A new proposal: <i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> as an Inner aspect marker	178
3.7	Accounting for the facts	182
3.7.1	<i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> in (i) and (ii)	183
3.7.2	<i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> in (iii)	185
3.7.3	Ambiguous sentences with <i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup>	186
3.7.4	<i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> in negative constructions	187
3.8	Sentences in which <i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup> seems to be a marker of the perfective	187
3.9	Summary	191
Chapter 4.	Evidence from Xùpǔ and Mandarin	193
4.1	Introduction	193
4.2	<i>tau</i> <sup>21</sup> ... <i>tsai</i> <sup>41</sup> in Xùpǔ	195
4.2.1	Verb final <i>tsai</i> <sup>41</sup> is different from verb preceding <i>tsai</i> <sup>41</sup>	198
4.2.2	<i>tau</i> <sup>21</sup> <sub>PERF</sub> vs <i>tau</i> <sup>21</sup> <sub>PROG</sub>	201
4.2.3	Summary	203
4.3	<i>zhe</i> in Mandarin	204
4.3.1	<i>zhe</i> <sub>DUR/PROG</sub> or <i>zhe</i> <sub>PERF/PROG</sub>	204

## Table of Contents

4.3.2	<i>le/zhe</i> <sub>PERF</sub>	211
4.3.3	Summary	213
4.4	<i>ta</i> <sup>21</sup> and <i>zhe</i>	213
4.5	Historical relations between <i>zhe</i> and <i>ta</i> <sup>21</sup>	215
4.5.1	The development of <i>zhe</i> in Mandarin	215
4.5.2	The development of <i>ta</i> <sup>21</sup>	217
4.6	Summary	220
4.7	Summary of chapter 4	221
Chapter 5. Conclusion		223
5.1	Tense and Aspect in Mandarin	223
5.2	<i>ta</i> <sup>21</sup> <sub>PERF</sub> , <i>ta</i> <sup>21</sup> <sub>PROG</sub>	224
5.3	The distribution and interpretation of <i>ka</i> <sup>41</sup>	226
5.4	<i>tau</i> <sup>21</sup> ... <i>tsai</i> <sup>41</sup> in Xùpǔ and <i>zhe</i> in Mandarin in support of <i>ta</i> <sup>21</sup> <sub>PROG</sub> and <i>ta</i> <sup>21</sup> <sub>PERF</sub>	228
5.5	Significance and further research	229
References		231
Samenvatting in het Nederlands (Summary in Dutch)		247
Summary		255
Summary in Chinese/中文摘要		263
Curriculum Vitae		269

**Key to abbreviations**

1SG	first person singular
2SG	second person singular
3SG	third person singular
CL	classifier
DUR	durative marker
EM	exclamative marker
EXP	experiential marker
INCHO	inchoative marker
LOC	locative marker
MP	modal particle
NEG	negative marker
QM	question marker
SUB	subordinate marker
SFP	sentence final particle
PERF	perfective marker
PL	plural marker
PROG	progressive marker



**Acknowledgements**

Writing this thesis has been very difficult for me, yet it turns out to be even harder to write the acknowledgements. The dissertation would not have been written without the help from many people. It is really hard to make a full list of the people who have helped with the thesis. Foremost, I would like to express my sincere gratitude to my supervisor, Prof. Rint Sybesma, for his continuous support, for his patience, motivation, enthusiasm and immense knowledge. I feel extremely lucky to have had him as a mentor throughout my research career. In every meeting I had with him, even when I was feeling frustrated and directionless, I left his office feeling invigorated and refreshed, and ready to tackle the challenges ahead of me. I cannot thank him enough for all he has done for me over the past decade or so.

My sincere thanks also goes to Prof. Lisa Cheng. I have benefitted a lot from the discussions and comments from her during my stays in Leiden. After I had finished my MPhil thesis in LUCL in Leiden several years ago, Prof. Cheng advised me to continue my studies. However, I chose to go back to my teaching, which proved to be a wrong decision.

Dr. Anikó Lipták played an important role in the final stages of the dissertation-writing. I thank her for many enjoyable meetings and for encouragement and support during my stay in Leiden. She provided valuable insights into several aspects of my work that would have otherwise have gone unnoticed.

My thanks also goes to my two colleges Prof. Ning Chunyan and Prof. Li Bing. I had never thought of doing a PhD, and certainly not in syntax. I had been doing translation studies before Prof. Ning came to our university, teaching courses in “generative syntax” which was still a new term for us then. Once, by chance, I attended Prof. Ning’s class on syntax and was very much attracted by the topic. Prof. Ning is responsible for inspiring my interest in syntax. Without his encouragement I would not have imagined doing a PhD in Leiden. I thank Prof Li Bing for admitting me to attend his generative phonology class. I remember clearly that he asked me to pronounce one word and after that he pointed out the dialect family which my language belongs to. It is from then on that I began to care much about the differences between my language and others. Prof Ning and Prof. Li have opened for me the way to the research.

During the period of study in Leiden, I benefited a lot from the help of other people. Without Jeroen van de Weijer's help, I could not have settled down so quickly and begun my study. Finding a place to live is not an easy job in Leiden. I thank Jeroen for being always ready to offer me a hand whenever I was in need.

I thank all those who taught classes during my study there. I have learnt a lot from them. I have to say that I have learnt a lot, not only about the varieties of languages in the world, but I was also infected with the enthusiasm about linguistics. It was from the study in Leiden that I began to love my present research more than ever.

All the staff in the LUCL has also helped me a lot during my study there. Their help has made my study there very convenient. Whenever I had a problem with facilities, they would help me with great patience. I thank them for their instant response and for providing information and assistance in arranging many things. They have provided a very pleasant atmosphere during the years I was in Leiden.

During the field work for my thesis, my two informants, Zhang Xian from Chenxi, and Ou Jujie from Xupu, have helped me a lot. I thank them for their great patience when I ask them again and again about certain sentences.

At last, I would like to give my thanks to my family. My husband always encourages me to do what I want. Without his encouragement, I would not think of leaving my family and stay for longer periods of time in Leiden. I was self-funded during my study in Leiden. Needless to say that without my husband's support, it would have been impossible for me to finish my study there. My thanks also go to my daughter. I feel very guilty as I have been away from her for the years when I should have stayed with her. It is their support that helped me focus on my study and research all these years.

## Chapter 1. Introduction

### 1.1 Basic introduction

The purpose of this thesis is twofold. On the one hand, I investigate the morpho-syntax of the aspectual system in one variety of Xiāng (namely: Chángshā), which is one of the ten sub-families<sup>1</sup> of Chinese (which are Mandarin, Xiāng, Gàn, Wú, Yù, Hakka, Mǐn, Pínghuà, Jīn, and Huī). In this context, I provide a detailed description and analysis of the aspect system of the Xiāng variety of Chángshā. On the other hand, I conduct the analysis from the perspective of general theories on inner and outer aspect, and the interaction between them, with the intention to contribute to the development of these more general ideas.

#### 1.1.1 The language, its speakers and its major properties

Xiāng is a group of linguistically similar and historically related varieties of Chinese, spoken mainly in Húnán province but also in parts of Guǎngxī, Sīchuan and Shānxī. Scholars divide Xiāng into Old Xiāng and New Xiāng according to the degree to which it has been influenced by Mandarin. Old Xiāng is influenced less by Mandarin than New Xiāng. Xiāng is further divided into five subgroups according to phonological features each variety has: Cháng-Yì, Lóu-Shào, Héngzhōu, Chén-Xù and Yǒng-Quán. The language I investigate in this thesis, Chángshā, belongs to Cháng-Yì.

---

<sup>1</sup> Classification of the dialect groups has varied. The classification widely adopted divides Chinese into seven regional groups: Mandarin, Wu, Gan, Xiang, Min, Yue, and Hakka (Yuan 1961). Three more regional groups have been proposed in 1980s: Jin, Hui and Pinghua. The dialect groups all have their own distinct phonological features, dialect specific vocabulary, and distinctive grammatical characteristics, to the extent that they are not mutually intelligible. The status of the newly proposed regional varieties is still being debated (Li 1989, Kurpaska 2010).

As to the distinction between Old Xiāng and New Xiāng, Old Xiāng varieties (with about 11.5 million speakers), are more conservative, have in general kept the voiced initials of Middle Chinese. For instance, Lóu-Shào, also known as typical Old Xiāng, exhibits the three-way distinction of the Middle Chinese obstruents, preserving voiced stops, fricatives and affricates, while the New Xiāng varieties have altogether lost them and changed them to voiceless unaspirated consonants. According to Norman (1988), Xiāng Chinese belongs to what he calls the middle group of varieties of Chinese. This group, also consisting of Gàn and Wú, originally belonged to the southern group but through many centuries of south-bound migration, has been heavily influenced by Northern varieties of Chinese, that is, Mandarin.

Chángshā is one of the New Xiāng varieties with approximately 17.8 million speakers. But the number is decreasing. Most of the local children do not speak Chángshā dialects. The Chángshā dialect is spoken predominantly in the city of Chángshā, which is the capital of Húnán province, and its neighboring suburbs.

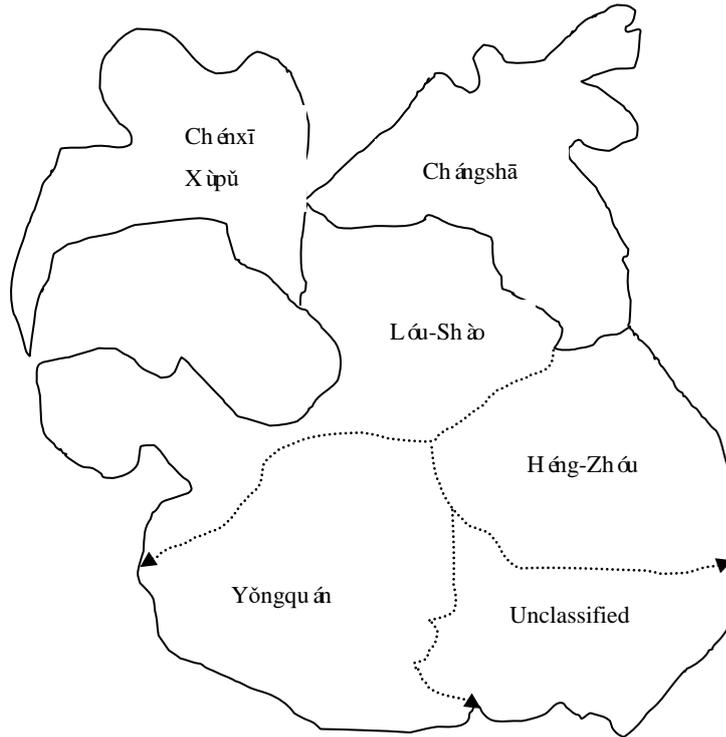
Chénxī and Xùpǔ Xiāng, which will be investigated as well, are spoken in western Húnán by about 3.4 million speakers. Chénxī and Xùpǔ Xiāng belong to Old Xiang. They are geographically separated from the New Xiāng dialects.

The location of Xiāng is shown in Map 1, from the *Language Atlas of China* (2012). The distribution of Chángshā, Xùpǔ, Chénxī and other subgroups of Xiāng dialects are shown in Map 2, from Bǎo and Chén (2007).

Map 1. The distribution of Chinese dialects from the *Language Atlas of China* (2012)



Map 2 The distribution of Chángshā, Xùpǔ, Chéixī and other subgroups of Xiāng dialect from Bāo and Chén (2007).



The Xiāng dialects share many grammatical properties with other varieties of Chinese: the basic word order is SVO, nouns are not inflected for case, gender and number, verbs are not inflected for tense and different types of aspects are marked by particles. There are 5 types of aspects: perfective, progressive, durative, experiential and prospective aspect. There are five tones in Chángshā, as indicated in table 1. Table 2 lists the initials and finals of the language.

Table 1. Tones of Chángshā (from Wǔ 1999)

yin <sup>33</sup> ping <sup>41</sup> tone	33	高	kau <sup>33</sup>	'tall'
yang <sup>13</sup> ping <sup>41</sup> tone	13	穷	tɕin <sup>13</sup>	'sky'
shang <sup>21</sup> tone	41	口	k <sup>h</sup> əu <sup>41</sup>	'poor'
yin <sup>13</sup> qu <sup>45</sup> tone	45	菜	ts <sup>h</sup> ai <sup>45</sup>	'vegetable'
yang <sup>41</sup> qu <sup>45</sup> tone	21	坐	tso <sup>21</sup>	'to sit'
ru <sup>41</sup> tone	24	六	ləu <sup>24</sup>	'six'

Table 2. The initials and finals of Chángshā dialect (from Wǔ 1999)

Initials	Examples		
p	布	pu <sup>41</sup>	'cloth'
p <sup>h</sup>	派	p <sup>h</sup> ai <sup>45</sup>	'sent'
m	马	ma <sup>41</sup>	'horse'
f	肥	fei <sup>13</sup>	'fat'
t	多	to <sup>33</sup>	'many'
t <sup>h</sup>	他	t <sup>h</sup> a <sup>33</sup>	'he'
l	来	lai <sup>13</sup>	'come'
tɕ	砖	tɕye <sup>33</sup>	'brick'
tɕ <sup>h</sup>	穿	tɕ <sup>h</sup> ye <sup>33</sup>	'wear'
ŋ	女	ŋy <sup>41</sup>	'female'
ɕ	新	ɕin <sup>33</sup>	'new'
k	歌	ko <sup>33</sup>	'song'
m	马	ma <sup>41</sup>	“horse”
n	你	ni <sup>41</sup>	'you'
x	喊	xan <sup>41</sup>	'shout'
ts	栽	tsai <sup>33</sup>	'plant'
ts <sup>h</sup>	菜	ts <sup>h</sup> ai <sup>45</sup>	'vegetable'
s	死	si <sup>41</sup>	'die'
z	人	zən <sup>13</sup>	'people'

## Finals

i	洗	ɕi <sup>41</sup>	'wash'
u	不	pu <sup>24</sup>	'not'
y	猪	tɕy <sup>33</sup>	'pig'
a	爬	pa <sup>13</sup>	'crawl'
ia	吃	tɕia <sup>24</sup>	'eat'
ua	挂	kua <sup>45</sup>	'hang'
ya	抓	tɕya <sup>33</sup>	'catch'
iɛ	叶	iɛ <sup>24</sup>	'leaf'
ɛ	姐	tɕɛ <sup>45</sup>	'sister'
ɣ	车	ts <sup>h</sup> ɣ <sup>33</sup>	'car'
uɣ	国	kuɣ <sup>24</sup>	'country'
o	哥	ko <sup>33</sup>	'brother'
io	脚	tɕio <sup>24</sup>	'foot'
ai	买	mai <sup>41</sup>	'buy'
uai	快	k <sup>h</sup> uai <sup>45</sup>	'fast'
yai	帅	ɕyai <sup>45</sup>	'handsome'
uei	鬼	kuei <sup>41</sup>	'ghost'
yei	水	ɕyei <sup>41</sup>	'water'
au	高	kau <sup>33</sup>	'tall'
iau	要	iau <sup>45</sup>	'want'
iē	盐	iē <sup>13</sup>	'salt'
yē	穿	tɕh yē <sup>33</sup>	'wear'
ȳ	闪	sȳ <sup>41</sup>	'spark'
ō	短	tō <sup>41</sup>	'short'
an	三	san <sup>33</sup>	'three'
ian	羊	ian <sup>13</sup>	'sheep'
uan	关	kuan <sup>33</sup>	'close'
yan	装	tsyan <sup>33</sup>	'load'
ən	中	tsən <sup>33</sup>	'middle'
in	冰	pin <sup>33</sup>	'ice'
uən	问	uən <sup>21</sup>	'ask'
yn	群	tɕyn <sup>13</sup>	'a group of'

This thesis will discuss some interesting, and within Xiāng also unique, properties Chángshā displays with respect to its aspect particles, especially the fact that one marker is used to express two quite different aspects.

### 1.1.2 Previous linguistic studies on Xiāng

Extensive investigation of the Xiāng dialect started in 1997, when a series of grammar books on Xiāng dialects was published (Cuī 1998, Hè 1999, Bào 1999, Peng Z.Run & Peng J.Guo 2013 among others). The series in question aims at providing a detailed documentation of the Xiāng dialects. Other works include Li (1990), which provides a detailed description of the vocabulary of Chángshā; Wǔ (1990), which focuses on the description of the aspect system in Chángshā; Wǔ (1999), which is the most comprehensive investigation of the grammatical system of Xiāng to date; Wǔ (2005), which provides, in English, a synchronic and diachronic study of the grammar of the Xiāng dialects; and Lú (2007), a grammar of Xiāng written in Mandarin.

It is widely assumed that the syntactic structure of Chángshā is similar to Mandarin (Lú 2007, Wǔ 2010). Little attention has been paid to the analysis of the syntactic properties of Chángshā.

Most of the previous works are concerned with the comparison of the differences between Mandarin and Xiāng, rather than recognizing the idiosyncratic properties in a more general sense or in their own right. Take the expression of aspectual meaning as an example. That one aspect marker is used to express more than one meaning or that more than one element is sometimes needed to express an aspect type has aroused very little attention. It is our purpose to provide an analytical account of the aspectual system in Chángshā (and Xiāng more generally).

### 1.1.3 Aim of the dissertation

This thesis investigates two particles in Chángshā,  $ta^{21}$  and  $ka^{41}$ . The former,  $ta^{21}$ , is involved in the expression of two types of aspect, which are normally thought of as quite different, imperfective (or even progressive), and perfective; the latter,  $ka^{41}$ , is a particle that is often characterized as a perfective particle,

but most of the time it is accompanied by  $ta^{21}$ . Example (1) shows  $ta^{21}$  as a perfective particle.

- (1)  $tsan^{33} san^{33} k^h an^{45} ta^{21} la^{45} pən^{41} xy^{33}$ .  
 read TA that CL book  
 'Tsansan read (in) that book.'  
 Or: 'Tsansan read that book (fully).'

In (2) we see the same particle,  $ta^{21}$ , in sentences with a progressive interpretation. It co-occurs with the element  $tsai^{21} ko^{24}$ . If this element occurs in preverbal position,  $ta^{21}$  is optional, if we find it in sentence final position,  $ta^{21}$  is obligatory.

- (2) a.  $ŋo^{41} mən tsai^{21} ko^{24} ta^{41} (ta^{21}) ma^{13} tɕian^{41}$ .  
 1PL TSAIKO play TA mahjong  
 'We are playing mahjong.'  
 b.  $t^h a^{33} k^h an^{45} *(ta^{21}) tian^{45} shi^{41} tsai^{21} ko^{24}$ .  
 3SG watch TA television TSAIKO  
 'He is watching TV.'

In (3) we see that  $ka^{41}$ , often analyzed as a perfective marker, cannot operate without  $ta^{21}$ .

- (3) a.  $tsan^{33} san^{33} k^h an^{45} ka^{41} *(ta^{21}) la^{45} pən^{41} xy^{33}$ .  
 read KA TA that CL book  
 'Tsansan read that book (fully).'
- b.  $Tsan^{33} san^{33} k^h an^{45} ka^{41} la^{45} pən^{41} xy^{33} *(ta^{21})$ .  
 read KA that CL book TA  
 'Tsansan has read that book (fully).'

In view of these observations, I formulate the following questions to be dealt with in this thesis:

- a) What is the interpretation and distribution of  $ta^{21}$ ?

- b) How can we account for the observation that in Xiāng, or in any case in the Chángshā variety of it, the same particle can be involved in the expression of different aspectual meanings?
- c) What is the interpretation and distribution of *ka*<sup>41</sup>?

In what follows I first provide an introduction to the theoretical tools used in this thesis in section 1.2, which includes a discussion of tense and viewpoint aspect (or outer aspect) and situation aspect (or inner aspect) in Mandarin. We will see that there are reasons to assume that there are three inner aspect positions in Mandarin. In section 1.3, I provide an overview of this thesis.

#### **Source of the data**

The data in this thesis mainly come from the existing literature and the fieldwork I carried out, supplemented by data of my own (based on my own linguistic intuitions, all checked with natives). I have two main informants: one is a female native of Chángshā, 60 years old, with a primary school diploma; another is a male native of the same city, 50 years old, with middle-school diploma. The fieldwork involved different approaches: (i) direct elicitation of sentences, with the informants explaining the meaning of each element of the sentences investigated; (ii) soliciting grammaticality judgments of existing sentences (with special attention to meaning and use in context).

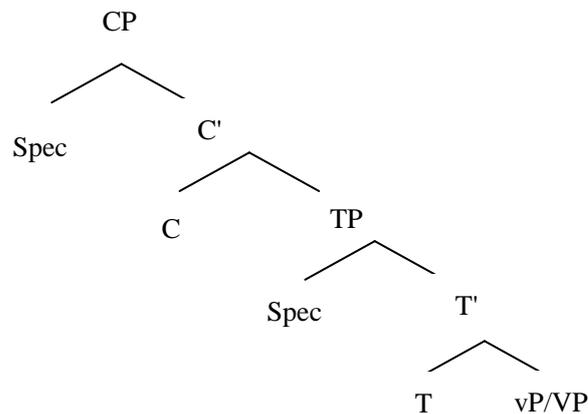
### **1.2 Theoretical background**

In this section, I am going to introduce some theoretical tools that I will use in the present dissertation. I mainly focus on two notions and the way of expressing them in Mandarin. One is tense and another is aspect. I am going to show different ideas on tense and aspect in Mandarin and I will point out which theories I am going to adhere to.

### 1.2.1 Tense in Mandarin

Any situation in the real world represented in language is located in time by relating the time of the situation to the time of the utterance (in Reichenbach 1947 and Klein 1994, the relation between the time of the situation and the time of the utterance is indirect as it is mediated by Reichenbach's reference time or Klein's topic time; we will not dwell on this, as it plays no role in this dissertation). Languages may make use of various ways to express this relation. The temporal information of a sentence can be expressed through aspectual markers, temporal adverbials or other categories, such as tense. Here we define tense as a grammaticalized category used to locate a situation in time (Klein 2009). Tense may be realized by verbal inflection. For instance, in English, the form *V-ed* is used to indicate that the situation described by the verb happened in the past. There are three basic tenses: past tense, present tense and future tense. In past tense, the situation happens before the speech time, in present tense, the situation takes place at the speech time, and in future tense, the situation happens after the speech time. Structurally, tense is generally assumed to head its own projection, TP (Pollock 1989; Belletti 1990; Chomsky 1991; Chiu 1993; Haegeman 1994; Bobaljik & Jones 1996; Radford 1997; Li 1999, 2007). Above TP is the projection headed by the complementizer, CP. The structure in (4) shows where in the structure the TP is generally assumed to be.

(4)



Not all languages indicate tense through verbal inflection. In Mandarin, verbs are not inflected for tense. Whether this language has tense as defined above, that is associated with a structural position (the head of TP) has been a hot topic. Some researchers claim that Mandarin is a tenseless language (Li & Thompson 1981; Klein Li Ping and Henri ète Hendricks 2000; Klein 1994; Hu, Pan & Xu 2001; J.W.Lin 2002, 2003, 2006; Smith & Erbaugh 2005; Mei 2002; among others). The main reason for this claim is that there is no morphological marking of a past/non-past distinction in the language. According to them, the temporal interpretation of a sentence is determined by aspectual markers, temporal adverbs, the aspectual nature of the predicate by the context. On the other hand, there are other linguists, like Li (1990), Huang (1982, 1998), Sybesma (2003, 2004, 2007), Lin (2003), Tsai (2008), and Di (2007) among others who argue that Mandarin is a language with structural (or syntactic) tense. The main reasons vary from the observation that the distribution of some temporal phrases or the temporal interpretation of some sentences can only be understood under the assumption of an active tense node, to the identification of the finiteness/nonfiniteness contrast.

In the following, I will introduce some of the analyses related to the question of tense in Mandarin. I will start the introduction with arguing for the existence of the finiteness/nonfiniteness distinction in Mandarin. Finite clauses are traditionally identified with tensed sentences, and non-finiteness clauses are

sentences with no tense. Recently, different views of the relation between tense and finiteness have been presented; see Nikolaeva (2007), Ladislav (2010), Kristin (2016) among others. However, in the present thesis, I assume, following the traditional idea, a finite sentence is a sentence with its own temporal reference, which is temporally anchored onto the context (see Enç 1987; Guéron & Hoekstra 1995; Bianchi 2002; Sybesma 2017 among others). In this definition, the encoding of finiteness depends on the presence of tense. Consequently, if, despite the fact that in Mandarin, neither finiteness nor tense is overtly marked, we can show that the finiteness/nonfiniteness distinction exists nonetheless, we also have shown that Mandarin has tense.

In the literature, many researchers have explored the finite/nonfinite contrast in clauses in Mandarin (see Huang 1982; Li 1990; Tang 1990; Tsai 1995; Paul 2002; Di 2007; Lin 2011, among others). Huang (1982, 1998) points out that though not overtly marked, finiteness can be identified in certain syntactic operations. Huang's argument mainly comes from the distribution of lexical subjects as opposed to non-overt subjects. See (5) - (6) (from Huang 1998:189).

- (5) a. Zhāngsān shuō [(tā) lǎi le].  
       say 3SG come PERF  
       'Zhangsan said that (he) came.'
- b. Zhāngsān xiāngxìn [(tā) huì lái].  
       believe 3SG will come  
       'Zhangsan believes that (he) will come.'
- (6) a. wǒ bǐ Lisi [PRO lái].  
       1SG persuade Lisi come  
       'I persuade Lisi to come.'
- a'. Lisi zhǔnbèi [PRO lái].  
       Lisi prepare come  
       'Lisi prepared to come.'

- b. \*wǒ    bī            Lisi [tā    lái].  
       1SG persuade Lisi 3SG come  
 b'. \* Lisi    zhǔnbèi    [tā    lái].  
       Lisi    prepare    3SG come

The embedded subjects in (5) can be null or non-null, but in (6) they must be null. The question is how we can explain the differences between (5) and (6). The basic assumption is lexical subjects in (5) must be licensed, per the Case Filter in (7) (Chomsky 1981).

(7) Case Filter

\*NP if NP has phonetic content and has no Case.

According to the Case Filter, an overt NP must be assigned Case to license it. The subject of a clause is assigned case only if it is in a certain configurational relation with the head of a functional projection, which used to be called "INFL" or "AUX" (Huang 1989:188), consequently called I, being the head of IP, which in turn was later split into several different functional projections, such as TP and AgrP (see e.g., Chomsky 1980, 1981). If we assume that the Case Filter applies to Mandarin just like any other language and subject Case is assigned in a uniform way in languages of the world, the fact that Chinese sentences can have overt subjects must then lead to the conclusion that Chinese also has an IP (or TP or AgrP). Huang, following Chomsky and standard assumptions, assumes that there are finite and non-finite IPs: the former can license the subject but the latter cannot, in that case there cannot be an overt subject.

Based on George and Kornfilt (1981), who claim that different languages may encode finiteness with different elements of AUX, a cover term for aspect markers and modals, Huang suggests that the potential occurrence of any element of the AUX category in a sentence can be used to argue for the existence of the finiteness/nonfiniteness distinction. Huang classifies verbs into two types: one type of verbs are those verbs like *shuō* 'say' and *xiāngxìn* 'believe' presented in (5), and another type are the so-called control verbs like *zhǔnbèi* 'prepare', *bī* 'force' presented in (6). Huang argues that the

finiteness/nonfiniteness distinction can be seen between these two types of verbs. The main evidence is the observation that the embedded clauses after *xiāngxìn* 'believe' type verbs can contain aspect markers or modals, as can be seen in (5), while the control verbs cannot, which are presented in (8) - (9). (8) - (9) are from (Huang 1998:189) with some modification.

- (8) a. wǒ zhǔnbèi [PRO lǎi].  
 1SG prepare come  
 'I prepared to come'
- b. \*wǒ zhǔnbèi [PRO hù/ néng/yīnggāi lǎi].  
 1SG prepare will/ can/ should/ come
- (9) a. wǒ bī Lisi [PRO lǎi].  
 1SG force Lisi come  
 'I forced Lisi to come.'
- b. \*wǒ bī Lisi [lǎi zhe/ guo/ le].  
 1SG force Lisi come DUR/ EXP/PERF

The embedded subjects in (8) - (9) cannot co-occur with modals and aspect markers. They are different from those in (5) in which aspect markers (as in (5a)) and modals (as in (5b)) can be used. Following George and Kornfilt (1981), Huang (1989) proposes that in Mandarin, a clause is finite if it contains an AUX. The comparison shown in (5) where aspect markers and modals can be used, and (8) - (9) where no modals or aspect markers are acceptable indicates that the finiteness/nonfiniteness distinction exists in Mandarin.

Huang further points out that AUX may contain constituents such as modals or aspect markers, or it may have the form of a zero-morpheme. For instance in (10), where although the sentence is not overtly marked in AUX, the embedded subject can be lexical. The assumption is that the habitual aspect has the form of a zero-morpheme (Huang 1998:190).

- (10) Zhāngsān shuō [(tā) měitiān ∅ lǎi].  
 say 3SG everyday ASP come  
 'Zhangsan said that (he) comes/came every day.'

As represented above, Huang argues for the existence of the finiteness/non-finiteness distinction in Mandarin based on the fact that some embedded clauses can contain overt subjects as well as modals or aspect markers like *hu ì* 'will', while others cannot. However, there are linguists who argue against it (Xu 1985, 1986; Hu, Pan and Xu 2001). For instance, Xu (1985,1986) argues that the ungrammaticality of (8b) does not originate from the nonfinite status of the embedded clause but from the semantic incompatibility between the modality of uncertain possibility and a planned event, since *hu ì* 'will' in Mandarin denotes not only futurity, but also possibility and uncertainty (Hu, Pan and Xu 2001:112). They point out that if *hu ì* 'will' denotes possibility, the ungrammaticality in (8b) is expected: there is a semantic contrast between *hu ì* 'will' that indicates an uncertain possibility and *zhǔnbèi* 'prepare' which indicates a planned event. However, according to us, this conclusion is not necessarily correct. For instance, the verb *shèfǎ* 'try', which indicates an uncertain event, is not semantically incompatible with *hu ì* 'will', but the sentence is still ungrammatical. See (11b).

- (11) a. wǒ      shèfǎ      [PRO míngtīan    lǎ ]  
          1SG    try                    tomorrow    come  
       b. \*wǒ      shèfǎ      [PRO míngtīan    hu ì lǎ ]  
          1SG    try                    tomorrow    will come  
               'I try to come tomorrow.'

In (11a), the verb *shèfǎ* 'try' is used and the embedded subject is null, and the sentence is grammatical. However, if the embedded clause contains the modal verb *hu ì* 'will', as in (11b), the sentence becomes ungrammatical. This indicates that semantics is not the factor that causes (8b) to be ungrammatical.

The existence of the distinction between finiteness and nonfiniteness is further argued for by Li (1985, 1990). Li (1985, 1990) suggests that the difference between finiteness and nonfiniteness in Mandarin can be evidenced by the co-occurrence of time adverbials and aspectual markers, the licensing of negative polarity items, and the realization of aspect (Li 1990:17). I introduce one of her arguments: the differences shown by the two types of verbs

(*tell*-verbs and *persuade*-verbs) with respect to the collocation of a temporal adverb and aspect markers.

Li observes that the collocation of the time adverbial *cóngqián* 'before' and aspectual marker *guo* indicating experiential aspect ('EXP') is constrained by the same-clause condition. See (12).

- (12) a. wǒ cóngqián gào sù guo tā [nǐ lái zhèr].  
 1SG before tell EXP 3SG you come here  
 'I told him before you came here.'
- b. \*wǒ cóngqián gào sù tā [nǐ lái guo zhèr].  
 1SG before tell 3SG you come EXP here
- c. wǒ cóngqián qǐng tā [chī guo fàn]  
 1SG before invite 3SG eat EXP meal  
 'I invited him to eat before.'

(12a) is grammatical since *cóngqián* 'before' and *guo* 'EXP' occur in the same clause. In (12b), *cóngqián* 'before' and *guo* 'EXP' appear in different clauses, and the sentence is ungrammatical. According to Li, this ungrammaticality results from the violation of the same-clause condition. What is interesting is (12c): *cóngqián* 'before' and *guo* 'EXP' occur in different clauses, but the sentence is grammatical. Li argues that (12c) can be accounted for if one assumes the *guo* 'EXP' in the sentence need not be interpreted in the embedded clause. She points out that the sentence does not mean that the person has actually accepted the invitation and eaten the meal; the sentence only ensures that I have invited him before. *Cóngqián* and *guo* are interpreted as if they are in the same clause. The interpretation of (12c) can be the same as that of (13).

- (13) wǒ cóngqián qǐng guo tā chī fàn.  
 1SG before invite EXP 1SG eat meal  
 'I invited him to eat before.'

However this cross-clause interpretation is not possible for *tell*-verbs.

- (14) a. wǒ g àosù tā tāmen jì è guo yān, tāmen dōu  
 1SG tell 3SG 3PL give up EXP cigarette 3PL all  
 bu z ài chōuyān le.  
 NEG again smoke SFP  
 'I told him that they once gave up smoking. They never smoked  
 again.'
- b. \*wǒ c óngqi án g àosù tā tāmen jì è guo yān.  
 1SG before tell 3SG 3PL give up EXP smoking

In (14a), the use of *guo* in the embedded clause indicates that the event expressed by the embedded clause has happened. (14b) is ungrammatical. What Li observes is that the cross-clausal aspectual relation is possible with sentences containing *persuade*-verbs but not with *tell*-verbs (Li 1990:20): in the one case the boundary between the matrix and the embedded clause is transparent while in the other it is not. And it is exactly with verbs that have nonfinite embedded clauses according to Huang's conclusions above where the boundary is transparent and those verbs selecting a finite clause for which it is not.

The above are the two analyses arguing for the existence of finiteness in Mandarin. As mentioned earlier, we take a finite sentence as one with its own temporal reference; the encoding of finiteness depends on tense (which may in some cases be strengthened by a temporal adverb). In Mandarin, both finiteness and tense are not overtly marked. However, this does not mean that there is no tense in Mandarin. The analyses provided by Huang and Li show that in Mandarin, we do find a distinction between finiteness and non-finiteness. Then according to our definition, this language must have tense as well.

Establishing a distinction between finiteness and nonfiniteness is only one of the approaches to argue for the existence of structural tense in Mandarin. Other linguists, such as Sybesma (2003, 2004, and 2007); Z.H.Lin (2003), and others argue for the existence of tense from either the perspective of the interpretation of temporal reference or the distribution of certain temporal phrases. In the following I introduce Z.H. Lin (2003) and Sybesma (2003, 2004, 2007).

Z.H.Lin (2003) proposes that there is a syntactic tense category in Mandarin in the form of an empty Op(erator), receiving a value from a c-commanding binder. His main argument comes from the effect of the temporal modifier *yǐqián* 'before' on the temporal interpretation of the sentence. The influence of *yǐqián* on the sentences results from its two properties. Firstly, Lin claims that *yǐqián* can optionally take a time argument. The interpretation of the sentence in which *yǐqián* 'before' appears varies depending on whether the time argument of *yǐqián* is present. With the time argument, the interpretation of the sentence can be generic or episodic (15a) - (15d); without the time argument, the sentence can only be interpreted as generic (16a) - (16d). (15) - (16) are from Lin (2003:9).

- (15) a. Lǎowáng sān nián yǐqián chōu xuějiā. (Generic)  
           three year yiqian smoke cigar  
           'Laowang smoked cigars three years ago.'
- b. Lǎowáng sān nián yǐqián qù le Táiběi. (Episodic)  
           three year yiqian go PERF Taipei  
           'Laowang went to Taipei three years ago.'
- c. sān nián yǐqián-de Lǎowáng chōu xuějiā. (Generic)  
           three year yiqian-SUB Laowang smoke cigars  
           '(Lit.) Laowang of ten years ago smoked cigars.'
- d. sān nián yǐqián-de Lǎowáng (yǐjīng) sǐ le. (Episodic)  
           three year yiqian-SUB Laowang already die PERF  
           (xi ànz ài nǐ kàn dào-de búshì tā běnrén.)  
           now 2SG see SUB be-not 3SG own  
           '(Lit.) Laowang of ten years ago (already) died; the one you see is not real him.'
- (16) a. Lǎowáng yǐqián chōu xuějiā. (Generic)  
           yiqian smoke cigar  
           'Laowang smoked cigars in the past.'
- b. \*Lǎowáng yǐqián qù le Táipěi. (INTENDED: Episodic)  
           yiqian go PERF Taipei  
           '(Lit.) Laowang went to Taipei in the past.'

- c. *yǐqián-de* Lǎowáng chōu xuéjiǎ. (Generic)  
 yiqian-SUB Laowang smoke cigar  
 '(Lit.) Laowang of the past smoked cigars.'
- d. \**yǐqián-de* Lǎowáng qù le Táipěi. (INTENDED: Episodic)  
 yiqian-SUB Laowang go PERF Taipei  
 '(Lit.) Laowang of the past went to Taipei.'

In (15a, b) and (16a, b), *yǐqián* 'before' is used as a sentential adverb occurring between the subject and the predicate; in (15c, d) and (16c, d), it is part of the subject, used as a nominal modifier with a modification marker *de*. In (15), the time argument is used and the sentences can be interpreted as generic or episodic. In (16), the time argument is not used and the sentence can only be interpreted as generic.

Secondly, Z.H.Lin holds that *yǐqián* 'before' affects the temporal interpretation of the sentence when it occurs in a predicate-external position (i.e., subject or adverbial position). It has no influence on the temporal interpretation of the sentence when it occurs in the object position. (17) is from Z.H.Lin (2003:13).

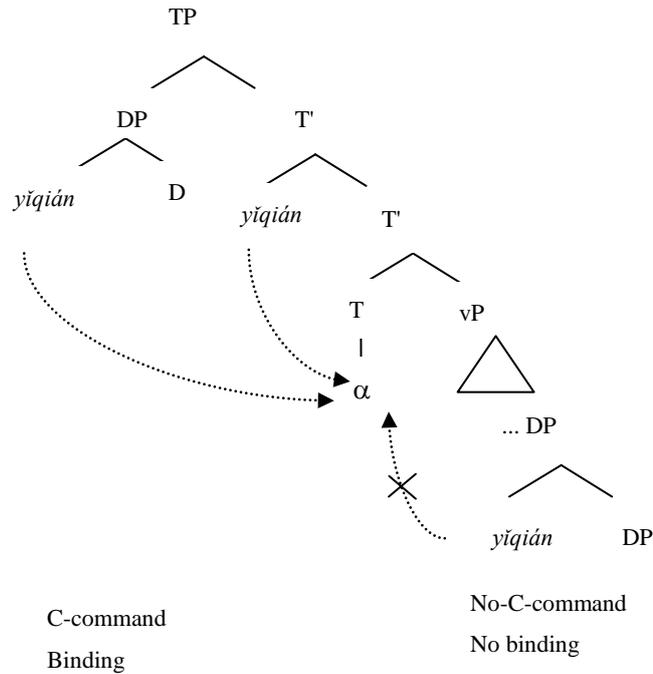
- (17) a. *yǐqián-de* Lǎowáng xǐhuān gǒu. (Holds true in the past)  
 yiqian SUB like dog  
 '(Lit.) Laowang of the past liked dogs.'
- b. Lǎowáng *yǐqián* xǐhuān gǒu. (Holds true in the past)  
 yiqian like dog  
 'Laowang liked dog in the past.'
- c. Lǎowáng xǐhuān *yǐqián* de gǒu. (Holds true at the speech time)  
 like yiqian SUB dog  
 '(Lit.) Laowang likes the dogs of the past.'

In (17a) - (17b), in which *yǐqián* 'before' occurs external to the predicate (as a modifier of the subject nominal and as a sentential adverb respectively), the state of *xǐhuān* 'like' holds true in the past. In (17c), *yǐqián* occurs internal to the predicate (modifying the object nominal), and the state of 'like' holds true at the speech time.

To account for the influences of *yǐqián* 'before' on the interpretation of the sentences, Z.H.Lin proposes that *yǐqián* 'before' projects a maximal projection,  $yǐqián^{Max}$ , with *yǐqián* occupying the head of this maximal projection, and the time argument in Spec of  $yǐqián^{Max}$ . The whole projection occupies an adjunct or adverbial position depending on whether it is used as a nominal modification or an adverb. In this structure, if the time argument is present, *yǐqián* 'before' denotes a specific point in the past. If not, the denotation of *yǐqián* 'before' will remain vague, and it will simply denote some unidentified interval of time in the past (Lin 2003:15). With this proposal, the generic/episodic reading of the sentences can be accounted for: if the time argument is present, *yǐqián* 'before' denotes a specific interpretation. Since a specific point of time is a prerequisite for the episodic interpretation of a sentence (Z.H.Lin 2003:15), the sentence with *yǐqián* 'before' and its time argument will be interpreted as episodic. If the time argument is not present, *yǐqián* 'before' will simply denote some unidentified interval of time in the past. That is why the sentence can only be interpreted as generic.

As for the influence that *yǐqián* 'before' has on the temporal reference of the sentence, Lin suggests that they result from the interaction of *yǐqián* 'before' and an empty operator, which according to him, occupies the head of a functional projection, the category Tense. The operator must be valued; it can either be valued by the discourse context or by some temporal expression in the same sentence which c-commands it. In the sentences above, *yǐqián* 'before' functions as the temporal expression. It values the empty tense operator when it c-commands it. For instance, in (17a), *yǐqián* 'before' occurs as a modifier of the subject nominal, it is adjoined to the subject DP. Z.H.Lin, following Kayne (1994), suggests this subject-modifying *yǐqián* 'before' occupies the highest position in the TP and c-commands the empty tense operator (Z.H.Lin 2003:20). It hence binds the empty tense operator and assigns past-time interpretation to it. In (17b) it is used as a sentential adverb, occurring between the subject and the predicate of the sentence, and the effect of assignment is the same. However, if it is an object-modifier, in a predicate-internal position, *yǐqián* does not c-command the tense operator, thus it cannot determine the value of the empty tense operator (17c) (Z.H.Lin 2003:21). The configuration Lin (2003) assumes is presented in (18) with some modification.

(18)



In Z.H.Lin (2003), the head of the T is occupied by an empty operator. In the rest of this dissertation, we accept the analysis of temporal interpretation of Chinese in Lin (2003), but we assume, following Sybesma (2004, 2007) (as will be introduced shortly), that the head of T in Mandarin is occupied by a pronominal variable  $\alpha$ . Hence in (18), we replace Op in Lin (2003) with  $\alpha$  in the sense of Sybesma (2004, 2007).

Z.H.Lin (2003) is not the only one who argues for the existence of tense in Mandarin. Sybesma (2003, 2004, and 2007) also argues for the idea that Mandarin sentences contain a T-node. As we just saw, the head of this TP is supposedly occupied by a pronominal variable, the interpretation of which is determined partly by the nature of the verb phrase (with an endpoint or not, stative or not) and partly through temporal adverbs and elements in the C-domain of the sentence. The first argument given by Sybesma (2007) is concerned with general theoretical considerations. Following Enç (1987),

Giorgi and Pianesi (1997), Guéron and Hoekstra (1995) and Klein (1994), who claim that without a T node, the temporal interpretation of a sentence would be impossible, Sybesma assumes that that is applicable to all natural languages, which means that sentences in Mandarin will also contain a T node (Sybesma 2007:581).

Secondly, Sybesma, following an argument made by Matthewson (2002), argues that we can actually observe a T node in Mandarin. See (19) (from Sybesma 2007:582).

- (19) a. Zhāngsān zhù zài zhèr.  
           live at here  
           'Zhangsan lives here.'  
       b. Zhāngsān 1989 nián zhù zài zhèr.  
           1989 year live at here  
           'Zhangsan lived here in 1989.'

The sentence in (19a) can only have a present tense interpretation. The sentence in (19b), with the temporal adverb gets a past tense interpretation. Importantly, if the subject of (19a) is a deceased person, the sentence is infelicitous in the same way an English sentence like *Winston Churchill lives here* is infelicitous. What this means is that the temporal interpretation of a sentence like (19a) can be set differently using linguistic material like an adverbial, but cannot be manipulated using non-linguistic knowledge. Since the temporal interpretation can only be reset using linguistic material, the source of the temporal interpretation must also be linguistic. Sybesma concludes from this that the structure of a Chinese sentence must contain a T-node. For a more detailed analysis, see Sybesma (2003, 2004, and 2007).

To sum up briefly, above, we have introduced different types of analyses arguing that syntactic tense exists in Mandarin. There are however, others who have argued against the existence of tense in Mandarin. As we have seen above, Xu (1982) and Hu, Pan and Xu (2001) have reasons to believe that finiteness is not a notion relevant for Chinese and consequently cannot be used to argue for the existence of Tense in Mandarin. We now continue to introduce the analysis in J.W.Lin (2002, 2003), who argues against the existence of a TP in Mandarin.

As many others, J.W.Lin (2002, 2003) builds his main argument on the observation that Mandarin lacks verbal morphology to express the distinction between present tense and past tense. He claims the nature of the predicate plays an important role in the temporal interpretation of a sentence (J.W.Lin 2003:261). (20) - (21) are taken from J.W.Lin (2003:261).

- (20) a. tā dǎpò yī gè huāpíng.  
 3SG break one CL flower vase  
 'He broke a flower vase.'
- b. tā bǎ wǒ gǎn chū jiàoshì  
 3SG BA 1SG drive out classroom  
 'He drove me out of the classroom.'
- c. tā zài Shànghǎi chūshēng.  
 3SG in Shanghai be.born  
 'He was born in Shanghai.'
- (21) a. tā hěn cōngmíng.  
 3SG very clever  
 'He is very clever.'
- b. wǒ xiāngxìn nǐ.  
 1SG believe you  
 'I believe you.'

The temporal references in (20) are the past and those for (21) are the present. There is no verbal inflection indicating the temporal references, the tenses in these sentences are valued through the situational properties. J.W.Lin builds his analysis on the work by Bohnemeyer and Swift (2001), who assume that there is a certain correlation between the telicity of an eventuality description and its aspectual viewpoint. That is, the default aspectual viewpoint of a telic event is perfective, while the default aspectual viewpoint of an atelic event is imperfective. Under this assumption, a telic predicate like *chī yí gè píngguǒ* 'eat an apple' is interpreted as perfective, whereas *run in the park* is imperfective. Basing himself on Bohnemeyer and Swift's (2001) notion of default aspect, J.W.Lin further assumes that in Mandarin covert tenses are subject to the

restrictions with regard to which aspect they may select, which is given in (22) (from J.W.Lin 2003:264).<sup>2</sup>

- (22) a. Covert present tense must select imperfective AspP as its complement.  
 b. Covert past tense must select perfective AspP as its complement.

Under the restrictions in (22) and the assumption by Bohnemeyer and Swift (2001), J.W.Lin holds that the interpretation of the temporal references in (20) - (21) can be made according to the aspectual information of the sentences. For example, (20a) *dǎpò yīge huāp ǐng* 'break a vase' describes a telic event. Since the default aspectual viewpoint of telic descriptions is perfective, it is understandable that the temporal reference in (20a) is located in the past. The same analysis can be extended to (20b) - (20c). In (21a) - (21b), the predicates *cōngmíng* 'clever' and *xiāngxìn* 'believe' are atelic. According to the default aspectual point of view, an atelic description is imperfective, and under the aspect selection restrictions in (22a), which says that covert present tense must select imperfective AspP as its complement, the temporal reference in (21a) - (21b) hence can be interpreted as the present tense. Given that the value of the temporal reference can be determined under the aspect selection restrictions in (22), J.W.Lin claims that it is unnecessary to rely on the existence of a covert tense node in Mandarin.

However, careful consideration shows that J.W.Lin's proposal is not without problems. The most important reason is that without any context, a telic event can be understood as being presented in the perfective; it can also be understood as being presented in the imperfective. The tense of the sentence hence can be interpreted as past tense or present tense. See (23) - (24).

- (23) Zhāngsān shuā bái tā de xiézi.  
           paint white 3SG SUB shoe  
           'Zhangsan is paint his shoes white.'  
           Or, 'Zhangsan painted his shoes white.'

<sup>2</sup> More on situation and viewpoint aspect in section 1.2.2 below. Here I just mention the general distinction between perfective and imperfective aspect in the sense of Smith (1997).

- (24) Zhāngsān shuō chū hěn duō mìnì  
       speak out very much secrecy  
 'Zhangsan is telling out many secrets.'  
 'Zhangsan told out many secrets.'

(23) and (24) are two resultative constructions. Each sentence can have two temporal interpretations, present tense and past tense. These sentences show that aspect selection restrictions do not work here.

What is more, (20c) also raises some questions. In (20c), the verb phrase *chūshēng* 'be born' is telic, the sentence should be interpreted as the past tense according to (22b). However, we observe that the interpretation of the temporal reference cannot be made without an adverbial modifier, be it of place or of time. See (25a).

- (25) a. \*tā chūshēng.  
       3SG be.born  
       INTENDED: 'He was born.'  
       b. ?? tā 1990 nián chūshēng.  
       1SG 1990 year be.born  
       'He was born in 1990.'

In (25a), no adverbial is used and the sentence is ungrammatical. If J.W.Lin is right in the sense that perfective is default in a telic event, and the temporal interpretation is the past, the ungrammaticality of (25a) is unexpected. In fact, as (25b) shows, when we add a temporal adverbial, and the sentence is still not fully acceptable. According to our judgment (and that of other mainland speakers we consulted), the same two question marks should be added to (20c). The sentences get completely acceptable only after the addition of perfective marker *le*:

- (26) tā 1990 nián chūshēng .  
       3SG 1990 year be.born  
       'He was born in 1990.'

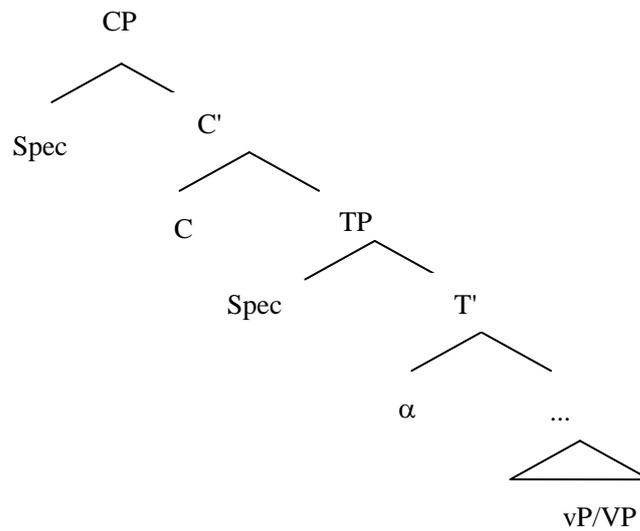
This shows that J.W.Lin's system does not work. The same can be said about (20a), which is much better with *le* as well, as is shown in (27).

- (27) tā dǎpò-le yī gè huāpíng.  
 3SG break-PERF one CL flower vase  
 'He broke a flower vase.'

To sum up, above, I have introduced different approaches to argue for the existence of TP in the structure of a sentence in Mandarin. Among them, Huang (1989) and Li (1990) start from the identification of finiteness. If we take finiteness to depend on tense, then we can make the argument that, since finiteness is a relevant notion in Mandarin, Mandarin has tense. Lin (2003) tackles the issue from the perspective of various effects that the temporal adverb *yǐqián* 'before' has on the interpretation of temporal references in the sentence. Lin argues that the different functions presented by *yǐqián* 'before' can be attributed to the interaction between *yǐqián* 'before' and an empty tense operator. Sybesma argues for a TP from the perspective of the interpretation of bare stative predicates, in which there are neither aspect markers, nor temporal adverbs, and the interpretation of which can only be manipulated using linguistic material (as opposed to non-linguistically expressed background knowledge). All the analyses show there must be some syntactic elements that interact with the temporal structure of the clause in Mandarin. I have also introduced J.W.Lin (2002, 2003), who argues against the existence of tense in Mandarin. I have shown that neither aspectual properties nor selectional restrictions can provide an account for the interpretation of temporal meaning in a sentence.

Based on the above introduction and the analyses we have presented, in the present thesis, we follow Sybesma (2003, 2004, and 2007), Huang (1982, 1998), Li (1990) and Lin (2003) among others, and assume that despite the absence of any overt markers, Mandarin has a tense node, a T, in the structure of the sentence. Specifically we assume that a Mandarin sentence has the following structure in (28).

(28)



There is a TP above vP/VP, the head of which is occupied by a pronominal variable  $\alpha$ , which can be bound, or “set”, by aspectual particles, temporal adverbials or other elements in the C-domain. In (28), we can also see that in between TP and vP/VP there may be other projections as indicated by the dots, for instance, aspect, which we are going to introduce now.

Since there do not seem to be any differences in this respect between Mandarin and Chángshā, the variety of Chinese we discuss in this thesis, I will assume the same applies to Chángshā.

### 1.2.2 Aspect

It is widely assumed that there is a distinction between Viewpoint aspect (also called Grammatical aspect, Outer aspect) and Aktionsart (also called Situation aspect, Lexical aspect, Inner aspect).<sup>3</sup> Viewpoint aspect refers to the way in which an event is presented (Smith 1997; Ramchand 2008; Travis 2010). It can

<sup>3</sup> I will use the terms viewpoint and situation aspect when the semantics is concerned, while when it comes to syntax, I will use Outer and Inner aspect.

be presented as a completed whole, that is, viewed as if from the outside, or going on, that is, viewed as if from the inside (Comrie 1976). The former is called perfective aspect and the latter is called imperfective aspect. Languages differ in their types of viewpoint aspect, yet the contrasting semantics between perfective and imperfective is the most outstanding, all languages show such a contrast.

Viewpoint aspect is distinguished from situation aspect, the latter being an inherent feature of verbs or verb phrases and is determined by the nature of the situation that the verb describes. Such an event can have an endpoint (in which case it is telic), or it does not have an endpoint (in which case we call it atelic).

Both viewpoint aspect and situation aspect have a structural representation. The former is represented by a projection which is structurally placed on top of little *v*, while the projection associated with the latter is placed between *vP* and *VP*, as a result of which we refer to them as Outer aspect and Inner aspect respectively. For discussion and motivation, see Zagona (1993) and Stowell (1995) for Outer aspect and Travis (2010), MacDonald (2008), Borer (1998, 2005), van Hout (2000), Kratzer (2004), and Ritter and Rosen (1998) for Inner aspect. Below, I am going to introduce accounts for the layered structure of aspect in Mandarin that will be relevant in this dissertation.

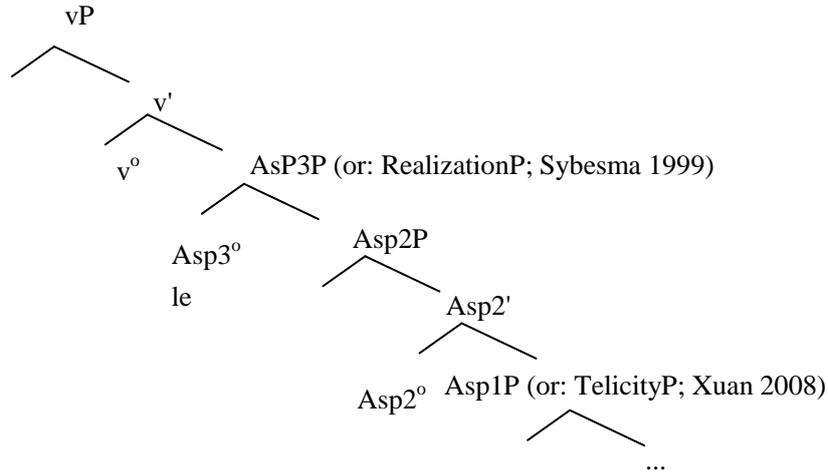
### 1.2.3 Viewpoint aspect in Mandarin

In this section, I introduce viewpoint aspect in Mandarin, based on what others have said about it. As with tense, I will take it that most conclusions will apply to Chángshā as well, unless indicated otherwise. In Mandarin, viewpoint aspect is marked by particles. Specifically, *le*, a suffix, is a perfective marker indicating that an event has been terminated or completed (Smith 1994). Specifically, in activities, *le* is used to indicate that an event has been terminated, while if it is an accomplishment event, it indicates the completion of the action. Preverbal element *zài* is a progressive marker, indicating that an event is ongoing, and *zhe*, a suffix, either indicates the resultative state or the ongoingness of an action. Suffix *guo* expresses experiential aspect, indicating that an event has taken place at least once before (e.g., see Chao 1968:251). The use of these particles is illustrated in (29).

- (29) a. tā chī-le yī wǎn fàn.  
 3SG eat-PERF one CL meal  
 'He ate one bowl of rice.'
- b. tā zǎi chī fàn.  
 3SG PROG eat meal  
 'He is eating the meal.'
- c. wǎimiàn xiàzhe yǔ.  
 outside rain-DUR rain  
 'It is raining outside.'
- d. wǒ jiàn-guo zhè ge rén.  
 1SG meet-EXP this CL person  
 'I have met this person once.'

In the literature, views differ with respect to the structural position of these particles. Some argue that *le*, *zǎi*, *zhe* and *guo*, as viewpoint aspect markers, uniformly appear in Outer aspect (i.e., higher than little *v*). Others, however, view them differently. For instance, Hu and Shi (2005) argue that the progressive marker *zǎi* is located higher than the other particles. Tsai (2008) also argues that *zǎi* and *guo* are higher than *le* and *zhe*; he only places the former in aspect positions above vP. Sybesma (2017) (as before, e.g., Sybesma 1999) claims that *le* is located in an Inner aspect position but interpreted in Outer aspect position. In fact, as we will see, according to Sybesma (2017), there are three Inner aspect positions in Mandarin, as illustrated in (30). Now I just focus on his ideas on the distribution and interpretation of the perfective marker *le*.

(30)



In (30), there are three Inner aspect projections between vP and VP, the perfective marker *le* is located in Asp3, Asp3P indicates whether the projected endpoint of a telic event is realized or not: When Asp3 is occupied by *le*, it is, otherwise, it is not. It is called a RealizationP (Sybesma 1997, 1999). Take (31), where we have an eating event, and a projected endpoint of the fish being finished: it is *le* that indicates that projected endpoint was in fact reached. In sentences without *le*, we may still have the endpoint, but it is not realized: *má-yǒu chī-guāng* /NEG-have eat-bare/ ‘haven’t eaten up’, *xiǎng chī-guāng* ‘want to eat up’. (For detailed analyses see Sybesma and Shen 2006, and Xuān 2008).

- (31) Tāmen chī-guāng-le yú  
 3PL eat-bare-ASP fish  
 ‘They finished the fish.’

What is important here is that, semantically, as a viewpoint aspect marker, perfective *le* should be in Outer aspect. However, in (30) it is in Inner aspect. Why is it there?

Sybesma provides two arguments for the idea that the perfective marker *le* is below little *v*. The first one is purely syntactic and builds on his analysis of the *ba*-construction in Mandarin (Sybesma 1999), in which *ba* is treated as an element which occupies little  $v^0$  (I will come back to the *ba*-construction in chapter 3). He claims that the little *v* in Mandarin must always be phonologically overt. This can be realized either by the movement of the verb or by inserting the element *ba*. So a transitive phrase is either [V-*v le*] (V has moved into *v*) or [*ba-v V le*] (*ba* has been inserted in *v*), as illustrated in (32). The point here is, if *ba* occupies  $v^0$ , then *le* cannot occupy a position in the Outer aspect domain: *ba* always precedes *le*, which in turn always follows V, as in (32b).

- (32) a. tā xǐ le yīfu.  
           3SG wash PERF clothes  
           'He has washed his clothes.'
- b. tā bǎ yīfu xǐ le.  
           3SG BA clothes wash PERF  
           'He has washed his clothes.'

Whatever is to the right of *ba* and not inside VP must be in the Inner aspect domain.

Sybesma's (2017) second argument is historical and is based on work by Xuan (2008). It is generally known that *le* started out as a full-fledged resultative element meaning 'complete', related to verb *liǎo* 'to finish', similar to verb *guāng* 'bare' in (31). And it gradually grammaticalized into an aspectual element expressing completion. Xuan (2008, 2011), following Roberts and Roussou (2003), points out that grammaticalization is associated with climbing upwards along the functional nodes in a syntactic structure, taking *le* as an example. In our structure, it started out in  $AsP1^0$  and over time climbed up the structure to end up in  $Asp3^0$ .

Having established that *le* is positioned lower than *vP*, the question left to explain is how it is possible that *le* occupies a position lower than  $v^0$ , i.e., in Inner aspect, and is at the same time interpreted as if it is in Outer aspect. In one way or another, a relation is established between these two positions to this

effect. Cheng and Sybesma (2004) and Cheng (2016) show that there are certain processes that are sensitive to the relation between these two aspect positions, one above and one below little *v*. There is also a different type of evidence. In Chénxī, one of the Xiāng dialects, there are two perfective markers: *tau*<sup>24</sup> and *lia*<sup>33</sup>, *tau*<sup>24</sup> being a preverbal element and *lia*<sup>33</sup> a postverbal one, which we assume has the same distribution as Mandarin *le* (*lia*<sup>33</sup> seems to be the cognate of *le*; it may have been borrowed from Mandarin). What is interesting is that *tau*<sup>24</sup> and *lia*<sup>33</sup> can co-occur:

- (33) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tau<sup>24</sup> ɛi<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu<sup>24</sup>.  
           3SG PERF wash clothes  
           'He has washed his clothes.'  
       b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> ɛi<sup>41</sup> lia<sup>33</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu<sup>24</sup>.  
           3SG wash PERF clothes  
           'He has washed his clothes.'  
       c. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tau<sup>24</sup> ɛi<sup>21</sup> lia<sup>33</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu<sup>24</sup>.  
           3SG PERF wash PERF clothes  
           'He has washed his clothes.'

In (33a), with *tau*<sup>24</sup>, the sentence means that he has washed his clothes: the washing event has been completed. In (33b), *lia*<sup>33</sup> follows the verb, *tau*<sup>24</sup> is not used. The sentence means the same as (33a). In (33c), both *tau*<sup>24</sup> and *lia*<sup>33</sup> are used with the same meaning as in (33a) and (33b). Even though (33c) is a grammatical sentence, my informants tell me that sentences with preverbal *tau*<sup>24</sup> are to be preferred. Older people prefer *tau*<sup>24</sup> instead of *lia*<sup>33</sup>. Only young people (or immigrants) will use verb final *lia*<sup>33</sup>, most likely under the influence of Mandarin. In any case, what these examples show is that *lia*<sup>33</sup>, like *le*, (presumably) occupies an Inner aspect position, while expressing the Outer aspect meaning of perfectivity, and that, in doing so, it is optionally doubled by preverbal element, *tau*<sup>24</sup>, which may very well be located in the head of Outer aspect. This confirms the idea that there can be a relationship between these two positions. We will use this finding in chapter 2.

In what follows I continue to use Sybesma (2017), in which Inner aspect in Mandarin is a three-layered structure. This idea of a three-layered Inner

aspect is important for me, since it helps me to provide an analysis to account for the distribution of the different aspect particles in Chángshā. In fact, our analysis of the Chángshā data provides strong evidence for this three layered structure, much stronger than the Mandarin evidence that Sybesma uses. But first we look at other aspects of situation aspect.

#### 1.2.4 Situation aspect: semantics and syntax

Situation aspect concerns the temporal construction of a verb. The earliest investigation of verb meanings can be traced back to Aristotle some 2000 years ago, whose ideas were further developed by Skyle (1963) and Vendler (1967). Vendler classified verbs into four types based on the properties of dynamicity, duration and telicity. The classification of verbs is illustrated in (34).

(34)

- (i) States: not dynamic, not telic (*know, love, belong to, etc.*)
- (ii) Activities: dynamic, not telic (*run, sing, swim, walk, etc.*)
- (iii) Accomplishments: dynamic, telic (*build, bake, eat, etc.*)
- (iv) Achievements: not dynamic, telic (*die, win, discover, arrive, etc.*)

Note that researchers differ much in viewing the classification of verbs. For example, Smith argues that apart from the above four types of predicates there is another type of predicate: semelfactive predicates (e.g. *cough, knock*). We just neglect the relevant discussion and take the four classes of verbs as the general division of verbs.

Telicity refers to whether or not the eventuality a predicate refers to involves a natural end-point. A predicate referring to an eventuality with such an endpoint is telic, and a predicate that refers to an eventuality that is not atelic. The widely accepted test for telicity is the use of temporal for-phrases and in-phrases. An event compatible with for-phrase is atelic and an event compatible with in-phrase is telic. For instance, (35a) is telic, the event comes to its end when the agent finishes the apple, it is compatible with an in-phrase but not with a for-phrase. (35b) is atelic; there is no endpoint for the event. We

do not know from the sentence when the action comes to its end. It is compatible with a *for*-phrase but not with an *in*-phrase.

- (35) a. John ate an apple *\*for* a few minutes/*in* a few minutes.  
 b. John ran *for* a few minutes/*\*in* a few minutes.

This view of distinguishing one verb from another is mainly based on the properties of the verb. However, it is quickly found out that, not only verbal meanings, but properties of verbal arguments and other NPs indicating the goal or result of an action also influence the telicity properties of an event (Verkuyl 1972; Krifka 1989; Travis 1994; Tenny 2000; Borer 2005 among others). For example, in (36), where the verbs are the same in both sentences, a numeral object will lead to a telic event (36a), while a plural noun object will lead to an atelic event (36b). In (37a), the location argument leads to an atelic reading, while in (37b), the goal argument yields a telic reading.

- (36) a. John built a house *\*for* months/*in* a month.  
 b. John built houses *for* months/*\*in* a month.
- (37) a. He pushed the cart in the park *for* hours.  
 b. He pushed the cart to the park *in* five minutes.

Sentences in (36) - (37) show that the meaning of a verb is not the only factor. The direct object or prepositional phrase can also affect the telicity of an event.

As mentioned above, following Krifka (1992, 1998), Borer (2005b) and Travis (2010) among others, I assume in the present thesis that a telic event is an event that contains an end point. A predicate which of itself is not telic, like an activity, can be compositionally made telic, thus forming an accomplishment, when an end point is added, in the form of an object with a specified quantity, a phrase which indicates the path before the event ends (a path argument), or other phrases which can be used to measure the temporal structure of the event. Achievement verbs are inherently telic.

Telicity is not only an important semantic property of predicates, it plays a great role in syntax too, in the sense that telicity is represented structurally

(Tenny 1987, 1994; Borer 1994, 2005; Travis 1991, 2000, 2010; Ritter and Rosen 2001, 2002). As is clear from the previous section, following the researchers just mentioned, and especially Travis (2010) and Sybesma (2017), I assume the existence of aspectual projections between vP and VP, which constitute the structural representation of situation aspect, especially telicity. In what follows, we will first introduce the semantic properties of telicity in Mandarin and then I introduce the analyses in the literature arguing for the existence of Inner aspect projections encoding telicity in that language. My starting point is Sybesma (2017).

### 1.2.5 Inner aspect in Mandarin

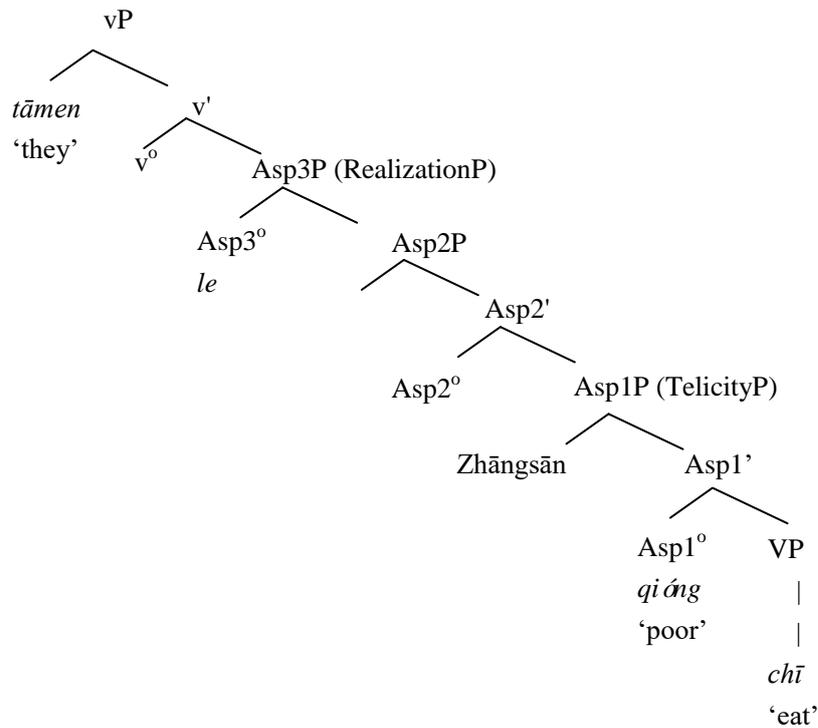
In this section, I introduce two analyses which argue for the existence of syntactic or compositional telicity in Mandarin from different perspectives: Sybesma (1999, 2011, 2017), who starts out from resultative constructions; So and Kuo (2005), who focus on properties of object noun phrases. These two analyses share the idea that telicity in Mandarin is syntactically encoded. But with regard to the structure of inner aspect, these three analyses vary. In Sybesma (1999, 2011, 2017), telicity is split into layers; while in So and Kuo (2005), telicity in Mandarin is like in many other analyses, a single projection.

In what follows, I start with Sybesma (2017), which holds that Inner aspect in Mandarin is a three-layered structure: bottom-up Asp1P, Asp2P and Asp3P between vP and VP. I have introduced Sybesma's analysis of Asp3P in section 3, in which Asp3P was identified as RealizationP, indicating whether the endpoint projected elsewhere (Asp1, as we will see) is realized or not.

Asp1P (or TelicityP; Xuan 2008) has the function of closing off the open end of the event or action denoted by the VP. It is occupied by fully lexical predicative elements, which assign a thematic role to a constituent in their spec. Asp2P lies in between TelicityP and Realization. If occupied, it indicates that the process, which is denoted by the VP and which is closed off by the endpoint denoting element in the head of Asp1P (or TelicityP), is no longer accessible for syntactic operations (Sybesma 2017). Another way of looking at it is that it makes the endpoint absolute and definitive. I will explain what is meant by this.

The Asp1P in Sybesma (2017) can be traced back to his analysis of VP construction in Mandarin in 1992, 1997 and 1999, when, based on Teun Hoekstra's work (1980s, 1990s), Sybesma developed a small clause (SC) analysis to deal with Mandarin verb-result phrases and *ba*-sentences (Sybesma 1999). In the SC analysis, resultatives are analyzed as follows: there is a V, which is atelic (it is an activity) and it has a complement which is constituted by bare subject-predicate combination, the small clause, which denotes the endpoint of the activity. The key idea of the SC analysis is that the verb in a resultative construction has an open end, and the process is closed off by a resultative denoting small clause. This idea is compatible with that of Tai and Chou (1975) and Tai (1984), where it is pointed out that, with a few exceptions, telic predicates in Mandarin consist of a verb denoting the action and a separate element denoting the result. Xuan (2008), following work by Travis and others, proposed to move the result denoting small clause into the functional domain right above VP, subsequently calling it TelicityP. Here is (31) again written in (38), with some small adaptations, to illustrate the analysis of a sentence like (39). It is important to emphasize once more that the head of Asp1P is a lexical predicative element which has a thematic relation with the nominal constituent in its spec.

(38)



(39) tāmen chī qióng le Zhāngsān.  
 3PL eat poor PERF Zhangsan

'They ate Zhangsan poor.'

(e.g. a big group of his friends ate so much that it resulted in Zhangsan becoming poor)

Asp1P, made up by *Zhāngsān qióng* 'Zhāngsān poor', provides the endpoint to the open ended activity denoted by the VP, here headed by *chī* 'eat', and Asp3P expresses whether the endpoint was reached or not (if its head is occupied by *le*, as it is in (38-39), it is, if not it isn't).

Sybesma (2017) introduces a third AspP, Asp2P, in between Asp1P (TelicityP) and Asp3P (RealizationP). The motivation of Asp2P is based on sentences like (40) (from Sybesma 2017, who adapted them from Xuan 2008).

- (40) a. Wǒ zǎo jù bǎ kè tīng cā wán le.  
 1SG early then BA living room sweep finish PERF  
 'I finished cleaning the living room a long time ago.'
- b. Nǐ bǎ mǎn suǒ-hǎo-le mǎ-yǒu?  
 2SG BA door lock-good-LE not-have?  
 'Did you lock the door?'
- c. Wǒ yìhí mǎ kàn-chéng nǎ-bù diànyǐng.  
 1SG all.along NEG look-success that-CL film  
 'I never succeeded in seeing that movie.'

In (40), we cannot interpret the sentences such that, for instance for (40a), *wán* 'finished' predicates of the *kètīng* 'living room' or that, in (40b), *hǎo* 'good, done' predicates of *mǎn* 'door': these sentences do not express that the living room is finished as the result of a cleaning event or that the door is done as the result of a locking event. Rather, the elements *wán* 'finished', *hǎo* 'good, done' and *chéng* 'succeeded' scope over the event as a whole: the event of cleaning the living room, etc. In Chinese linguistics, these elements are known as "phase complements" (Chao 1986), not to be confused with the term "phase" in minimalism. Since they do not predicate of the object, these elements do not occupy Asp1<sup>0</sup>, and since they co-occur with *le*, they obviously also do not occupy Asp2<sup>0</sup>. That is why Sybesma proposes a third position.

Sybesma tries to connect this tree to differences between accomplishments and achievements, suggesting that the difference may be a structural one. Although both telic, achievements and accomplishments are different in the sense that accomplishments involve durativity, dynamicity, or agentivity, while achievements are (near) instantaneous changes from  $\neg\phi$  to  $\phi$  (Rothstein 2004:155; as quoted in Sybesma (2017)). As a result, accomplishments are compatible with the progressive, while achievements are not. As (41) shows, the accomplishment expression *write a letter* is compatible with the progressive, while this is not the case for the achievement verb *find*.

- (41) a. Mary was writing a letter.  
 b. \*Mary was finding her key.

With a reference to Tai (1984), and Tai and Chou (1975), Sybesma (2017) notes that the Mandarin counterpart of achievement verbs often consist of a process and an endpoint, just like accomplishments. Examples include *kàn-jìàn* 'look-perceive < see' and *zhǎo-dào* 'search-success < find'. The difference between achievements and accomplishments lies in the nature of the element that expresses the endpoint: with accomplishments, the endpoint is a lexical element and it does not block the process preceding it from being syntactically accessible (hence, the possibility of forming a progressive; see (41a,b)), while the endpoint denoting element in achievements is expressed by the type of elements that we called “phase complements” earlier on, and they do block the process expressed by the verb preceding it, with the result that forming a progressive is not possible, as shown by (42) (all examples from Sybesma; % in (42b) shows variation among native speakers consulted).

- (42) a. Tā (zhèng)zǎi cā gān bōlí.  
 3SG right be.at wipe dry glass  
 'He is wiping the glass dry.'
- b. Nǐ zǎi gān shénme?! %Nǐ zǎi nòng huǎi wǒ  
 2SG be.at do what 2SG be.at do broken 1SG  
 de diànnǎo!  
 SUB computer  
 'What are you doing?! You are destroying my computer!'
- (43) a. \*Wǒ zhèng-zǎi kàn chéng nà bù diànyǐng.  
 1SG right-be.atlook success that CL film
- b. \*Wǒ zhèng-zǎi zhǎo dào wǒ de yàoshi  
 1SG right-be.atfind out 1SG SUB key

After some discussion, Sybesma concludes that the difference between (42) and (43) is related to the position the endpoint denoting elements occupy: elements in Asp1<sup>0</sup> do not block syntactic operations targeting the V, whereas elements in Asp2<sup>0</sup> do, thus giving a structural account of the difference between accomplishments and achievements. His argument is strengthened by facts like the following, in which both positions are filled:

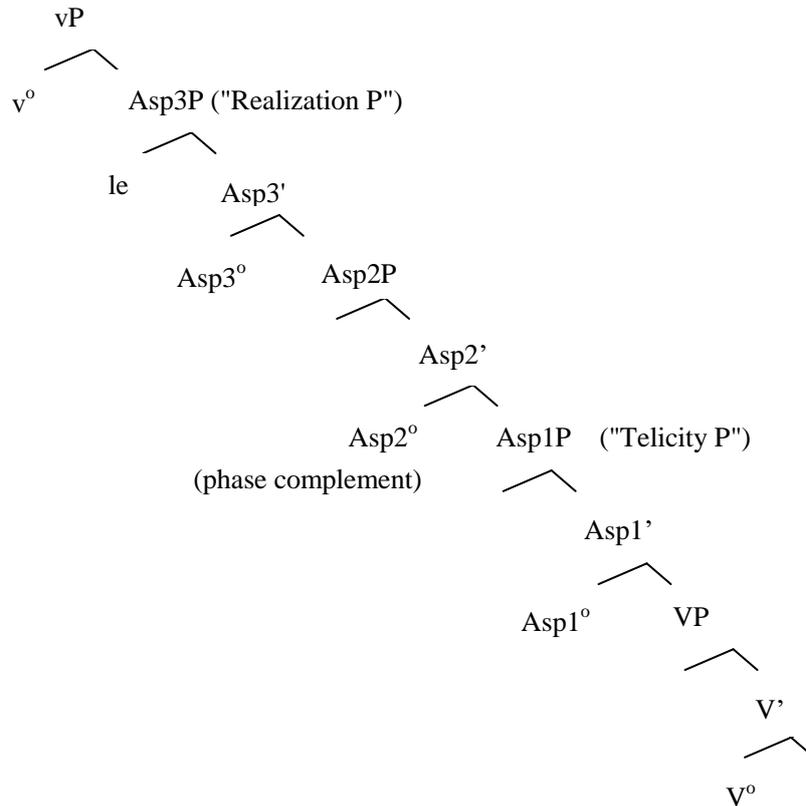
- (44) a. Tā    bǎ    diànnǎo    nòng    sǐ    diào    le!  
           3SG   BA   computer   do    dead off    PERF  
           'He completely destroyed the computer!'
- b. Wǒ    bǎ    yùndòngxié    pǎo    huài    diào    le.  
           1SG BA   sneakers    run    to.pieces off    PERF  
           'I ran my sneakers completely to pieces.'

Note that the progressive is not compatible with them (44a), while it was in (42b); this is shown in (45).

- (45)    \*Nǐ    zài    nòng    huài    diào    wǒ    de    diànnǎo!  
           2SG   be.at   do    broken   off    1SG   SUB   computer

Here is the tree once more, as proposed by Sybesma (2017), even though it is based on Travis (2010) Xuan (2008, 2011).

(46)



The head of Asp1P is where the lexical endpoint is positioned (like *sǐ* 'dead' in (44a) and *hu ài* 'broken' in (44b)) and the head Asp2P is filled by the elements called phase complement (like *dì ào* 'off' in these examples), while the head of Asp3P is occupied by perfective marker *le*.

In the following chapter, I assume Sybesma's (2017) analysis, modifying it in at least one place in that I will argue that Asp2° may be occupied by different types of elements (not just these "phase complements") and that its function varies accordingly.

Above, I focused on Sybesma's (2017) view of Inner aspect in Mandarin. Aside from concretely proposing the three-layered structure in between vP and VP, it also is one way in which researchers have shown that situation aspect is compositional in Mandarin. Other researchers have proposed similar views,

leading to similar structures. In the next section, I review Soh and Kuo (2005), who look at the relation between telicity and properties of object noun phrases.

### 1.2.6 Telicity in Mandarin

Whether there are telic verbs in Mandarin has aroused a hot discussion in the literature. Tai (1984) holds that there are no simplex accomplishment verbs in Chinese. In many cases, telicity is only implied. The expression of telicity arises with the addition of a resultative complement, as we saw above, or a bounded object, and in the latter case, the telicity is only implied, or so it seems, when we consider examples such as those in (47a), where an accomplishment predicate sentence is followed by a sentence denying the implied result of the first.

- (47) a. tā xiě le yī fēng xìn, kěshì méi xiě wán.  
           3SG write PERF one CL letter, but NEG write finish  
           'He wrote a letter, but he did not finish it.'
- b. # He wrote a letter, but he did not finish it.

The first part of (47a) describes an accomplishment situation, presented in the perfective, and yet, the sentence is compatible with a follow-up sentence that negates the completion of the action in the first sentence. This is different from English. In English, an accomplishment situation presented in the past or perfective followed by an assertion that the event has not been completed causes a contradiction (see (47b)).

However, Soh and Kuo (2005) point out that telicity is not always only implied. It depends on a number of factors, such as the type of verb and the type of object. They suggest that the absence of a contradiction in (47a) has to do with the nature of the object in a creation event like writing a letter. They divide events into two classes: those that Allow Partial Object (APO) and those that allow No Partial Object (NPO). In NPO situations we have a created object which cannot be considered the relevant object until the process of creation has reached its inherent endpoint. For example, *yī-jīān fángzi* 'a/one house' cannot be properly called 'a house' in a building event until the building of the house is

finished. In APO contexts, on the other hand, the object *can* be considered the relevant object before the inherent endpoint of the event is reached. For example, if a drawing event (*hu à yī fù hu à* 'draw a picture') is stopped before reaching its inherent endpoint, the object created can still be called "a picture".

Based on the distinction between NPO and APO, Kuo and Soh claim that the compatibility of the negating follow-up sentence in (47a) can be attributed to the properties of the object, *yī-fēng-x* 'a letter', which, according to them, is an instance of an APO: even an unfinished letter is still a letter.

As Soh and Kuo point out, we see a similar phenomenon with other than verbs of creation in the sense that the nature (esp. divisability) of the object is of utmost important in creating genuinely telic events. Consider the contrast between (48a) and (48b), where completion is necessary with a numeral object but not with a demonstrative object.

- (48) a. tā chī le nà gè dàngāo, kěshì mǎ chī wán.  
 3SG eat PERF that CL cake but NEG eat finish  
 'He ate two cakes /that cakes', but he did not finish them /it.'
- b. \*tā chī le liǎng gè dàngāo, kěshì mǎ chī  
 3SG eat PERF two CL cake but not eat  
 finish  
 wán.  
 'He ate two cakes, but he did not finish them /it.'

In (48a), the object is a definite noun phrase; the sentence is compatible with a negating follow-up sentence, while this is not possible if the object is a quantized noun phrase (48b). Soh and Kuo point out that this is related to the feature specification of nominal phrases. Following Jackendoff (1991), Soh and Kuo assume that nominal arguments may bear the features  $\pm$ b[ounded] and  $\pm$ i[nternal] structure. The feature [+b] refers to the boundedness of an entity. The feature [+i] indicates whether the entity has inherent division into discrete members (Soh and Kuo 2005). The feature specification for English nouns is presented in (49) from (Jackendoff 1991:20).

(49) English

Bare mass nouns	[-b,-i]	substances	( <i>custard, water</i> )
Bare plurals	[-b,+i]	aggregates	( <i>sandwiches, buses</i> )
Singular count noun	[+b, -i]	individuals	( <i>the sandwich, a bus</i> )
Numeral plurals	[+b, +i]	aggregates	( <i>3 sandwiches, 4 buses</i> )

However, different from Jackendoff (1991), Soh and Kuo suggest that the features are encoded in the nominal head and nominal projection in a bottom-up manner under a feature percolation rule. See (50) from Soh and Kuo (2004:206, 207).

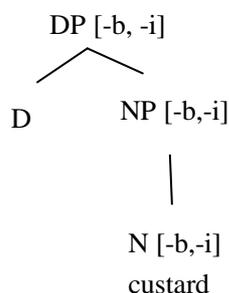
(50) Numeral	[-b]→[+b]
Definite determiner or demonstrative	[-b] →[±b]
Classifier	[-i] →[±i]

In (50), a numeral changes the [-b] feature of its selected constituent to [+b]. A definite determiner or demonstrative changes the feature [-b] of its selected constituent to [±b]. The classifier changes the [-i] feature of its selected constituent to [±i].

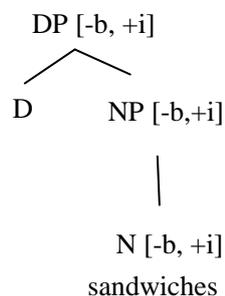
Under the rule in (50), the feature specification for English noun phrases is presented in (51) (from Soh and Kuo (2005:206, 207).

(51)

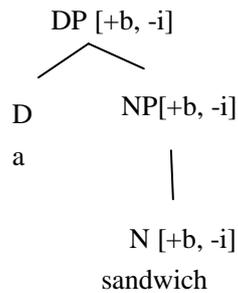
a. Bare mass nouns [-b, -i]



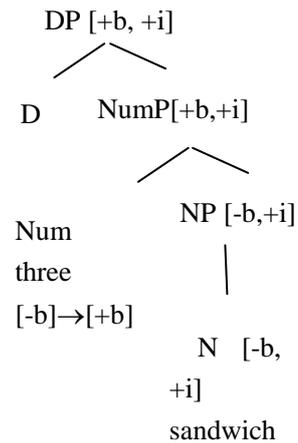
b. Definite plurals [-b, +i]



## c. Singular count nouns [+b,-i]

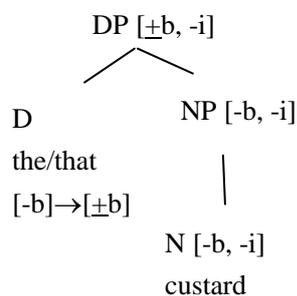
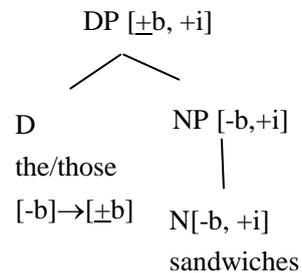


## d. Numeral plurals [+b, +i]

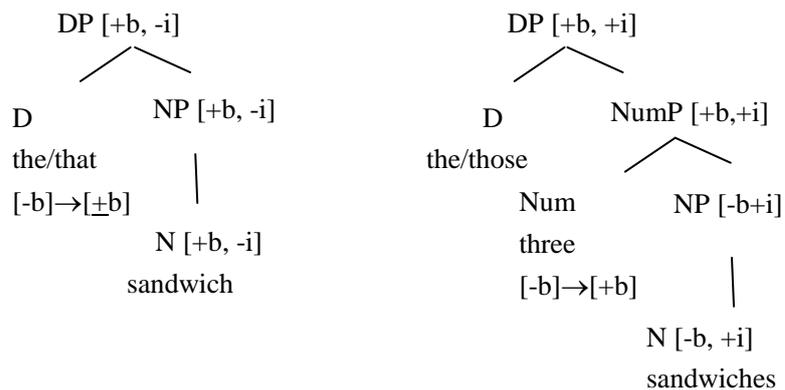


(51) shows the bottom-up feature percolation caused by the numeral. The same feature percolation process can be extended to DP, where the definite determiner and the demonstrative change the boundedness feature of the constituent they select from [-b] to [+b] (cf. Jackendoff 1996). See (52) (from Soh and Kuo 2005:206).

(52)

a. Definite mass nouns [ $\pm$ b, -i]b. Definite plurals [ $\pm$ b, +i]

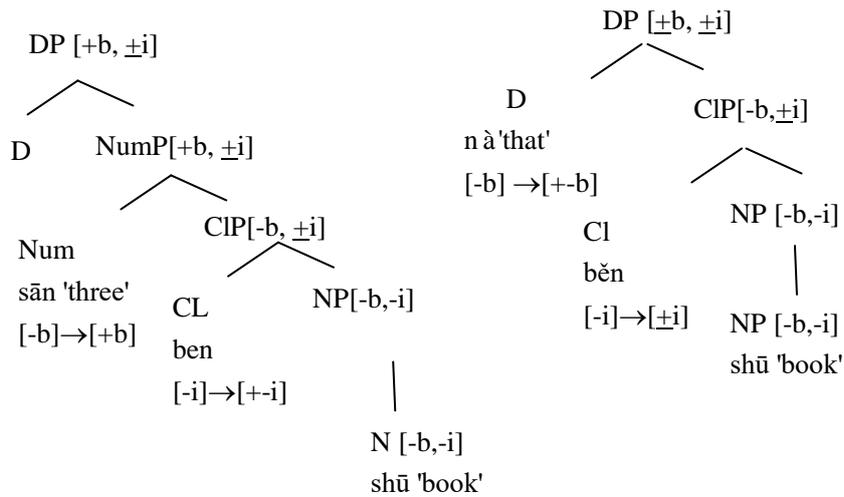
c. Definite singular count nouns [+b, -i] b. Definite numeral plurals [+b, +i]



However, Mandarin is different from English, in the sense that Mandarin head nouns do not differentiate between mass from count as is pointed out in Chierchia (1998): Mandarin head nouns are mass (but see Chang and Sybesma 1999 for counterarguments to this claim). They are specified as [-b, -i]. Based on the rules given in (50), the feature percolation of nominal phrases in Mandarin is presented in (53) (from Soh & Kuo 2005:212).

(53)

a. Numeral expressions [+b, +i]      b. Demonstrative noun phrase[+b, +i]



(53) shows that in Mandarin a DP with an object containing a numeral ends with [+b] feature, and a DP with an object containing a demonstrative ends with [±b] through the process of bottom-up feature percolation. The feature percolation in the DP projection explains why a perfective accomplishment with a numeral object is not compatible with the negation with the entailed result, while it can if the object contains a demonstrative phrase.

The importance of all this for this thesis is that, in this thesis, based on the analysis of feature percolation in nominal phrase in Soh & Kuo (2005), I assume that in Mandarin only accomplishment verbs with an object containing a numeral compose a genuinely telic event, while if the object contains a demonstrative phrase it may express a telic or an atelic event.

### 1.2.7 Summary of Chapter 1

This chapter presents an introduction to the language we will investigate (the Chángshā variety of Xiāng) and to some theoretical tools that I will use in my analysis. I have introduced the properties of tense and aspect (Outer aspect and

Inner aspect) in Mandarin. I concluded that Mandarin has a TP and that the perfective marker *le* is located in an Inner aspect position but interpreted in an Outer aspect position. Furthermore, Inner aspect in Mandarin is a three-layered structure.

The main purpose of this thesis is to investigate the morpho-syntax of aspect in Xiāng, to find out what the properties of the aspect system in Xiāng are in the perspective of general linguistics. I assume that in the relevant respects, Xiāng is like Mandarin: it has a TP and a three-layered Inner aspect. This framework, will enable me to present a novel approach to the use of the elements *ta*<sup>21</sup> and *ka*<sup>41</sup> in the Chángshā dialect.

### 1.3 Overview of the thesis

This thesis aims at investigating the morpho-syntax of aspect in Xiāng, more in particular the variety spoken in Chángshā. The purpose is twofold: language specific as well as more generally theoretical. On the one hand, I will provide an analysis of the expression of aspect in Xiāng, while on the other hand I point out that the cases we are dealing with are not isolated from linguistics in general.

The main motivation comes from two observations. First, I observe that there are cases in which one aspect particle is applied to express more than one aspectual meaning. For instance, I observe that in Chángshā, one of the Xiāng varieties, in some cases, the particle *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be used to express a perfective meaning, but in some other cases, it can also be used to express a progressive/durative meaning. It is not clear how people distinguish the perfective meaning from the progressive/durative meaning since they are expressed by the same particle. Secondly, there is the particle *ka*<sup>41</sup>, which has been analysed as a perfective marker as well but I think that this is mistaken: first, in many contexts it cannot be a perfective marker and aside from that, it can co-occur with *ta*<sup>21</sup>.

These observations lead to the following research questions:

- a) What is the interpretation and distribution of *ta*<sup>21</sup>?

- b) How can we account for the observation that in Xiāng, or in any case in the Chángshā variety of it, the same particle can be involved in the expression of different aspectual meanings?
- c) What is the interpretation and distribution of  $ka^{41}$ ?

Within the Inner aspectual framework presented above, I point out that there are two particles sharing the same morphological form: one is used as a perfective marker,  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$ ; the other is used as a progressive marker,  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$ . The difference between the two particles lies in the different syntactic positions they occupy.  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$  indicating whether an event is realized or not, is structurally higher than  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$ , indicating that the action presented is ongoing and continuous. Both  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$  and  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  are located in Inner aspect positions, lower than little *v* and higher than *V*.

Aside from arguing that  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  is a progressive marker occupying one of the inner aspect positions, I point out that there is another progressive marker, in Outer aspect position. That is, we have two progressive markers in Xiāng. One is  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$ , the other is the preverbal  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ . What differentiates  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  from  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  is that the latter is located in Outer aspect, while  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  is in Inner aspect position. As we will explain,  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  focuses on the meaning of ongoingness, while  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  focuses on the meaning of both ongoingness and continuation. Another difference is that, unlike  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ ,  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  must always be accompanied by other material. Using the framework introduced above as well insights from Tsai (2008) on tense anchoring, I will explain why this is the case.

As noted before,  $ka^{41}$  was treated as a perfective marker in the previous literature. In the present thesis however, it is argued that  $ka^{41}$  should not be treated as perfective marker. The main reason is that its distribution is much more restricted: it only appears in telic events, to give one example. Instead of treating  $ka^{41}$  as a perfective marker, I explore the possibility of locating it in the position labeled as  $Asp2^0$  in the tree structure introduced above (the “phase complement” position). I argue that it indicates that the process expressed by *V* that precedes the endpoint denoted by the result denoting element in  $Asp1^0$  is not accessible for further syntactic operations. For instance, it is not possible for the event to be

presented in the progressive.  $ka^{41}$  occupies the same position as  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ , mentioned above. These two markers never co-occur.

As we will see towards the end, in Chángshā and Xiāng in general, all three Inner aspect positions can be lexically realized.  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  occupies Asp3<sup>o</sup>;  $ka^{41}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  occupies Asp2<sup>o</sup>, and a lexical result predicate may be located in Asp1<sup>o</sup> position.

As indicated above, the significance of this thesis is meant to lie in the description and analysis of aspect in Xiāng, but also more generally in that it will support analyses in which Inner aspect plays a role. Furthermore, the thesis underscores the claim that Chinese languages are not all the same. Although the basic analysis is the same, the way the different positions in the structure are realized is different. For instance, although Mandarin has “phase complement” it does not have an element like Xiāng  $ka^{41}$ . Also, whereas this language has one element that can express both perfective and progressive/durative aspect,  $ta^{21}$ , Mandarin uses two different elements for these purposes, *le* and *zhe* respectively.

#### 1.4 Summary of the following chapters

Following this introductory chapter, there are altogether 4 more chapters in this thesis.

In chapter 2, I provide an analysis to account for the interpretation and distribution of the postverbal aspect particle  $ta^{21}$ . It is multi-functional. The interpretation of  $ta^{21}$  varies according to context. It can be a perfective marker,  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ , indicating that an action has been completed. It can also be a progressive marker  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ , indicating that an action is in ongoing and continuous. The central question in this chapter is how it is possible that one element can express two such different aspectual notions. I provide an analysis to distinguish the contexts for the different interpretations of  $ta^{21}$ . I point out that we have two different  $ta^{21}$ s, labeled  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ , which share the same morphological form. I argue that both are located in the Inner aspect domain, however,  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is structurally lower than  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ . An interesting difference between  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is that the latter, unlike the former, must always be accompanied by other material, such as a preverbal progressive

marker *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> or an element of the same form in sentence-final position. I explain this by adopting Tsai's (2008) ideas on Tense anchoring. Tsai assumes that for a sentence to be grammatical Tense has to be supported one way or another. One way in which this can be done is by moving aspectual element into the T-position. I argue that, because it is too deeply embedded in Inner aspect, *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub> is unable to move up to combine with T to anchor the sentence to tense, while *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> is high enough to do so. Since it cannot do it itself, *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub> needs other elements to do the job.

In chapter 3 I provide an analysis of the distribution and interpretation of the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup>. The central questions in this chapter are:

- a) What is the semantic interpretation and syntactic distribution of *ka*<sup>41</sup>?
- b) How can we explain the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup>? Is it just an idiosyncratic property of Xiāng or an instantiation of certain properties in general sense?

I show that the general idea in the literature that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is a perfective marker is not correct. After discussing several options, I conclude *ka*<sup>41</sup> is an element that is located in the position labeled as Asp2<sup>0</sup> in the tree structure introduced above (the “phase complement” position). I argue that it indicates that the process expressed by V that precedes the endpoint denoted by the result denoting element in Asp1<sup>0</sup> is not accessible for syntactic operations. For instance, it is not possible for the event to be presented in the progressive. It provides a definitive end to the event.

In Chapter 4, I provide three analyses that are used to further support the proposed analysis of *ta*<sup>21</sup> in chapter 2. The first analysis is built on data from Xùpǔ, another Xiāng variety. The second one is based on the distinction between *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub> and *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> in Mandarin. In the third analysis, I show that historically *zhe* has been evolved from a perfective marker to an imperfective marker. *ta*<sup>21</sup> is the cognate of *zhe*. In this sense, the use of *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> and *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub> can be seen as similar to that of the two *zhes*.

Chapter 5 presents the conclusion. In this chapter, I summarize the main assumptions and analyses of each chapter. I also point out the relevance of the present research to analyses of aspect in Mandarin syntactic theory more generally and I present some questions for further research.



## Chapter 2. V + *ta*<sup>21</sup>

### 2.1 Introduction

An event can be presented as a whole, including the beginning and endpoint; it can also be presented with its inner stages. These two ways of presenting events are known as perfective and imperfective respectively. In Mandarin, these two ways are indicated by aspect particles. We have mentioned in chapter 1, that perfective is presented by the particle *le*. Imperfective is presented by preverbal *zài* or postverbal *zhe*. *zài* is a progressive marker indicating that an action is ongoing, and *zhe* is what is often called a durative marker indicating that a result state stays, but it can at other times also indicate that an action is in progress. There are cases in which the differences between *zài* and *zhe* are not so clear-cut, e.g., when both are used to indicate the continuity of an action. We will see later on that Tsai (2008) assigns different structural positions *zài* and *zhe*. In chapter 4, I will return to this particular point, but since the differentiation between them is not my concern in this chapter, I just use the term “imperfective” to refer to both *zài* and *zhe*. The expression of perfective and imperfective in Mandarin can be seen in (1b, 1c) and (1d, 1e) respectively.

- (1) a. tā nǎ zhe/le yī běn shū zài shǒu li.  
 3SG take IMP/PERF one CL book LOC hand in  
 with *zhe*: 'He was holding a book in his hand.'  
 with *le*: 'He took a book in his hand.'
- b. tā mǎi le yī běn shū.  
 3SGbought PERFone CL book  
 'He bought a book.'
- c. tā kàn le yī běn shū.  
 3SG read PERF one CL book  
 'He read a book.'
- d. tā zài kàn yī běn shū.  
 3SG IMP read one CL book  
 'He is reading a book.'

- e.  $t\bar{a}$   $k\grave{a}n$   $zhe$   $w\check{o}$   $b\grave{u}$   $shu\bar{o}$   $hu\grave{a}$ .  
 3SG look IMP 1SG NEG speak words  
 'Looking at me, he did not speak.'

*zhe* and *le* are both aspectual particles, with contrasting meanings. The two particles are acceptable in (1a). When *le* is used, the action is presented as having been completed, if *zhe* is used, the result state is presented as staying on (Li &Thompson 1981); in (1b) - (1c), *le* indicates that the action has been terminated/completed; in (1d),  $z\grave{a}i$  is used and the action is presented as ongoing. In (1e), *zhe* is used to indicate the continuation of an action, while at the same time another action takes place. Given the use of aspectual particles and their interpretations, we might conclude that different aspects are associated with different particles.

In this chapter, however, we see that in Chángshā, both the perfective and imperfective aspect are expressed by the same marker,  $ta^{21}$ . This is illustrated in (2) - (4).

- (2) a.  $li^{41}$   $k^h\grave{a}n^{45}$   $la^{41}$   $p\grave{a}n^{41}$   $xy^{33}$   $pu^{24}?$   
 2SG read that CL book QM  
 'Will you read that book?'  
 b.  $li^{41}$   $k^h\grave{a}n^{45}$   $ta^{21}$   $la^{41}$   $p\grave{a}n^{41}$   $xy^{33}$   $mau^{21}?$   
 2SG read TA that CL book QM  
 'Have you read (in) that book?'

The minimal pair in (2) shows that  $ta^{21}$  is a perfective marker: aside from the negative question particle at the end (which differs according to the aspectual properties of the predicate; see Cheng, Huang and Tang 1996). Formally, the only difference between these two sentences is the presence vs. absence of  $ta^{21}$  which correlates with the difference in meaning: the perfectivity in (2b) which is missing in (2a). There can be little doubt that  $ta^{21}$  is a perfective marker.

However, when we look at the sentences in (3), there can be equally little doubt that  $ta^{21}$  is an imperfective (more particularly, a progressive) marker:

- (3) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> la<sup>41</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
       3SG NEG read that CL book  
       ‘He has not read that book.’
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>41</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
       3SG NEG read TA that CL book  
       ‘He is not reading that book.’

We will consider the details later on in this chapter, but if we look at the elements in (3b), the progressive reading must come from *ta*<sup>21</sup>. That *ta*<sup>21</sup> can express both perfective and progressive is confirmed by (4), which is ambiguous. The only element that can be source of the ambiguity is *ta*<sup>21</sup>.

- (4) t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> zən<sup>41</sup> zəz<sup>41</sup> tsən<sup>33</sup> tsən<sup>33</sup> ti k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>41</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
       3SG attentively read TA that CL book  
       ‘He read that book attentively (not necessary finished).’  
       ‘He is reading that book attentively.’

Given this observation, we are naturally led to ask:

- a) How can these two contrastive meanings be expressed by one single form *ta*<sup>21</sup>?
- b) In which context is *ta*<sup>21</sup> used as a perfective marker and in which contexts is it used as an imperfective marker?

Note that in the present thesis, since one of my major tasks is to investigate the use of *ta*<sup>21</sup> as a perfective marker on the one hand, and an imperfective marker on the other hand, in asking the above questions, I neglect temporarily the distinction between progressive and durative. As I have mentioned in the start of this chapter, I just use the term "imperfective" to refer to both (even though at some point I will distinguish between them). The same goes for termination and completion, which will be subsumed under the cover term "perfective".

Different from analyses in the literature (which will be reviewed below), I argue for the idea that there are two *ta*<sup>21</sup>s sharing the same morphological form. I call them *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> and *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub>. I will argue that one of the properties that

distinguishes  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  from  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is the ability of the former, and not of the latter, to interact with tense in such a way that it can enable tense to “anchor” (in the sense of Tsai 2008; see below) the event expressed by the predicate. The reason why  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  can do this while  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  cannot has to do with their respective positions. In reference to the discussion in chapter 1, I assume that  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ , though physically located in the highest inner aspect position (“RealizationP, see chapter 1), entertains a relation with the Outer aspect position, where it is interpreted. On the other hand,  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is located lower than  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ , as a consequence of which it is too low to have a similar relationship with Outer Aspect. For the sentence to be grammatical, it needs other mechanisms to make sure the event argument is licensed; we will discuss this in detail below. Consequently, unlike  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ , which always needs to be accompanied by other elements,  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  can stand alone as no other elements are necessary to help tense license the event argument: it can do it itself. My analysis is hence different from previous investigations in two respects: First, perfective aspect is not located in Outer aspect position (as is generally assumed; see below), but in Inner aspect position. And second, the multifunction of  $ta^{21}$  is not decided upon by the semantics of verbs (as is often done, as we will see), but by the structural property of two different  $ta^{21}$ .

This chapter is organized as follows. In section 2.2, I present a more detailed description of the distribution and interpretation of  $ta^{21}$ . I show that  $ta^{21}$  can be interpreted as a completion/termination or a progressive marker, depending on the context. In section 2.3, I present an overview of the traditional analyses of the multiple functions of  $ta^{21}$ , which claim that the variation in the interpretation of  $ta^{21}$  depends on the semantic “dynamicity feature” of the verbs it attaches to, or argue that  $ta^{21}$  is a “transition” marker. Both approaches share the basic idea that there is only one particle  $ta^{21}$ . In section 2.4, I evaluate the “dynamicity feature” analysis and point out that the “dynamicity feature” is not the decisive factor that affects the interpretation of  $ta^{21}$ . I will also show that it is not sensible to treat  $ta^{21}$  as a “transition” marker. In section 2.5, I point out that it is unsatisfactory to take a single particle approach to  $ta^{21}$ . We will argue for the existence of two particles  $ta^{21}$ . In section 2.6, I provide an analysis to interpret the sentence final  $tsai^{21}$ , arguing that it is a present tense operator. In section 2.7, I provide an analysis to



b.  $tsan^{33} san^{33} k^h u^{24} ta^{21}$ .  
cry PERF

'Tsansan cried.'

(6) a.  $*tsan^{33} san^{33} \zeta i^{21} i^{33} fu$ .

wash clothes

b.  $tsan^{33} san^{33} \zeta i^{21} ta^{21} i^{33} fu$ .

wash PERF clothes

'Tsansan washed his clothes (not necessarily finished).'

(7) a.  $*tsan^{33} san^{33} k^h an^{45} san^{33} p\grave{a}n^{41} xu^{33}$ .

read three CL book

b.  $tsan^{33} san^{33} k^h an^{45} ta^{21} san^{33} p\grave{a}n^{41} xu^{33}$ .

read PERF three CL book

'Tsansan read three books.'

(8) a.  $*p\grave{e}i^{33} tsi p^h o^{45}$ .

cup break

b.  $p\grave{e}i^{33} tsi p^h o^{45} ka^{41} ta^{21}$ .

cup break KA TA

'The cup broke.'

In (5) - (8) we see that the (a) sentences, without  $ta^{21}$  are ungrammatical or, in the case of (5a), have an imperfective reading. After  $ta^{21}$  is used in (b) sentences, the ungrammatical sentences become grammatical, and they all have a perfective interpretation.  $ta^{21}$  in these sentences is used as a perfective marker. Note that  $ta^{21}$  is not allowed to follow a stative predicate. For example, (9b) - (10b) are ungrammatical.

(9) a.  $t^h a^{33} \zeta i^{41} xoŋ^{33} \zeta ou^{45} \zeta io^{24}$ .

3SG love math

'He loves math.'

b.  $*t^h a^{33} \zeta i^{41} xoŋ^{33} ta^{21} \zeta ou^{45} \zeta io^{24}$ .

3SG love TA math

- (10) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup>    çin<sup>45</sup>                      Wan<sup>13</sup>.  
           3SG    be family-named    Wan  
           'He has family name Wan.'
- b. \*t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup>    çin<sup>45</sup>                      ta<sup>21</sup>    Wan<sup>13</sup>.  
           3SG    be family-named    TA    Wan

Verbs like *çi<sup>41</sup>xoŋ<sup>33</sup>* 'love', *çin<sup>41</sup>* 'be family named', *iou<sup>41</sup>* 'have', and *shou<sup>24</sup>u<sup>13</sup>* 'belong to', etc. are incompatible with *ta*<sup>21</sup>.

In short, the above shows that, with eventive predicates, *ta*<sup>21</sup> is used as a perfective marker, indicating that an event has been completed/terminated. Normally, *ta*<sup>21</sup> is not acceptable in stative predicates.

In what follows I introduce another case, in which *ta*<sup>21</sup> can only be interpreted as a progressive marker. However, the context in which *ta*<sup>21</sup> functions as a progressive marker depends on a number of conditions. It seems that whenever *ta*<sup>21</sup> is used as a progressive marker, the sentence always needs some other elements. For instance, it is a negative construction, or the sentence is modified by an adverbial phrase.

## 2.2.2 *ta*<sup>21</sup> as a progressive marker

As is shown above, generally, with non-stative verbs, *ta*<sup>21</sup> is used as a perfective marker, indicating that an action has been completed/terminated. In this section, I will show that in certain contexts *ta*<sup>21</sup> is used to indicate the ongoingness/progression of an action. These contexts are: (i) sentences with a negation; (ii) sentences which are modified by manner, instrumental or locative adverbs, or quantification; and (iii) sentences with a progressive marker.

### 2.2.2.1 *ta*<sup>21</sup> with negation

There are two negation markers in Chángshā, one is *pu*<sup>24</sup> 'not', which is used to negate subjective intention, expressing prohibition and unwillingness; another is *mau*<sup>21</sup> 'not have', which negates the occurrence of events. If a sentence is

modified by the negation marker *mau*<sup>21</sup> 'not (have)', the action presented with *ta*<sup>21</sup> can only have a progressive reading. Compare (11a) and (11b).

- (11) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG NEG watch TV  
           'He did not watch TV.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG NEG watch TA TV  
           'He was not watching TV.'  
           NOT: 'He did not watch TV.'

In (11a), the negation marker *mau*<sup>21</sup> 'not (have)' is used, *ta*<sup>21</sup> is not used, and the sentence can have a perfective reading. Interestingly, (11b) contains the negation marker *mau*<sup>21</sup> 'not (have)' as well as the element *ta*<sup>21</sup>: in this sentence, the action presented can only have a progressive reading. More examples are given in (12) - (13), where both members of each pair contain *ta*<sup>21</sup>, however, events in the (a) sentences are presented as having been completed, while events in the (b) sentences are presented as ongoing.

- (12) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu.  
           3SG wash TA clothes  
           'He washed his clothes.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu.  
           3SG NEG wash TA clothes  
           'He was not washing his clothes.'
- (13) a. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> shan<sup>21</sup> wu<sup>41</sup> kao<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> uɕi<sup>41</sup> shən<sup>33</sup>.  
           this morning do TA cleaning  
           'Tsansen did cleaning this morning.'
- b. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> shan<sup>21</sup> wu<sup>41</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> kao<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> uɕi<sup>41</sup> shən<sup>33</sup>.  
           this morning NEG do TA cleaning  
           'Tsansen was not doing the cleaning this morning.'

The sentences in (11) - (13) show that if *ta*<sup>21</sup> appears with the negation marker *mau*<sup>21</sup>, the action described is presented as ongoing. *ta*<sup>21</sup> is the marker of the progressive reading. In what follows I show that in a sentence which is modified by an adverbial, such as a manner adverbial, the use of *ta*<sup>21</sup> can produce a progressive reading.

### 2.2.2.2 *ta*<sup>21</sup> with manner adverbials

Adverbials normally precede the verb in Chángshā. When an activity verb is modified by a certain type of adverb, the sentence is ambiguous. It can be interpreted as either a progressive or as a perfective sentence. These modifiers include *manner*, *locative* and *instrumental* adverbs, as illustrated in (14) - (15).

- (14) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> ma<sup>24</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tsuo<sup>24</sup>tsi<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG clean TA desk  
 'He cleaned the desk.'  
 NOT: 'He is cleaning the desk.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> fei<sup>33</sup>k<sup>h</sup>uai<sup>45</sup>ti ma<sup>24</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tsuo<sup>24</sup>tsi<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG quickly clean TA desk  
 'He cleaned the desk quickly.'  
 'He is cleaning the desk quickly.'
- (15) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> ɕiɛ<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tsi<sup>21</sup>.  
 3SG write TA character  
 'He wrote character(s).'  
 NOT: 'He is writing characters.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> in<sup>21</sup> tso<sup>41</sup>shou<sup>41</sup> ɕiɛ<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tsi<sup>21</sup>.  
 3SG use left hand write TA characters  
 'He wrote characters with his left hand.'  
 'He is writing characters with his left hand.'

In (14a), *ta*<sup>21</sup> is interpreted as a perfective marker only, while in (14b), where the sentence is modified by the manner adverb *fei*<sup>33</sup>*k*<sup>h</sup>*uai*<sup>45</sup>*ti* 'quickly', *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be interpreted as a progressive marker indicating that the action is ongoing as

well (next to the use as a perfective marker). The ambiguous interpretation of *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be observed in (15a) and (15b) as well. The difference is that in the latter the predicate is modified by the instrumental adverb *in*<sup>21</sup> *tsuo*<sup>41</sup> *shou*<sup>41</sup> 'with his left hand'. The fact that the interpretation of *ta*<sup>21</sup> seems to be influenced by adverbial modifiers is further illustrated in (16) - (18).

- (16) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> uan<sup>21</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>41</sup> fu<sup>41</sup> fa<sup>21</sup>.  
 3SG stare TA that CL picture  
 'He stared at that picture.' (Only interpretation possible)
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tai<sup>33</sup> tai<sup>33</sup> ti<sup>21</sup> uan<sup>21</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>41</sup> fu<sup>41</sup> fa<sup>21</sup>.  
 3SG attentively stare TA that CL picture  
 'He is staring at that picture attentively.'  
 'He stared at that picture attentively.'
- (17) a. ta<sup>33</sup> kən<sup>33</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> ŋo<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG follow TA me  
 'He followed me.' (Only interpretation possible)
- b. ta<sup>33</sup> tɕ<sup>h</sup>iao<sup>41</sup> tɕ<sup>h</sup>iao<sup>41</sup> ti<sup>21</sup> kən<sup>33</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> ŋo<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG quietly follow TA 1SG  
 'He followed me quietly.'  
 'He is following me quietly.'
- (18) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>au<sup>33</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> mən<sup>13</sup>.  
 3SG knock TA door  
 'He knocked at the door. (Only interpretation possible)'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tɕ<sup>h</sup>iao<sup>41</sup> tɕ<sup>h</sup>iao<sup>41</sup> ti<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>au<sup>33</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> mən<sup>13</sup>.  
 3SG lightly knock TA door  
 'He knocked at the door lightly.'  
 'He is knocking the door lightly.'

*ta*<sup>21</sup> in (16a) can only be interpreted as a perfective marker; in (16b), it can be interpreted as a perfective marker and it can also be interpreted as a progressive marker. The same is true in (17). In (17a), *ta*<sup>21</sup> only has a perfective reading,

while in (17b), where the sentence is modified by manner adverb *tɕ<sup>h</sup>iao<sup>41</sup>tɕ<sup>h</sup>iao<sup>41</sup>ti* 'quietly', *ta*<sup>21</sup> can refer to the ongoingness or completion/termination of the action. Similarly, in (18b), the adverb *tɕ<sup>h</sup>in tɕ<sup>h</sup>in ti* 'quietly' is used, and the action is interpreted as ongoing or completion/termination, without the adverbial, the action has to be interpreted as being terminated.

The above shows that in certain contexts *ta*<sup>21</sup> is a progressive marker, which leads to the conclusion that we have two *ta*<sup>21</sup>s, a perfective marker and a progressive marker. In what follows I show that *ta*<sup>21</sup> can occur in sentences presented in the progressive marked by preverbal marker *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>.

### 2.2.2.3 *ta*<sup>21</sup> with the progressive marker *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>

In section 2.2.1 we have seen that *ta*<sup>21</sup> is used as a perfective marker; it indicates that an action has been completed/terminated. In section 2.2.2, we have seen that in some cases, the interpretation of *ta*<sup>21</sup> is ambiguous: it can be interpreted as a perfective marker, but it can also be interpreted as an imperfective marker indicating the ongoingness of an action. In the present section, I show that *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be used with predicates modified by preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> which is the marker of the progressive aspect.

In most varieties of the Xiāng dialect, progressive aspect is expressed by the preverbal progressive marker *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>(*li*) or *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*la*<sup>45</sup>(*li*), originating from the locative phrases *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>*li* 'here' and *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*la*<sup>45</sup>*li* 'there' respectively. *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> has become a grammaticalized progressive marker in Chángshā. *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> and preverbal locative phrases are not allowed to co-occur in one sentence, see (19).

- (19) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>41</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG PROG watch TV  
           'He is watching TV.'  
       c. \*t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup> tɕia<sup>33</sup> li tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>41</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG LOC home in PROG watch TV

(19a) illustrates the progressive aspect, expressed by *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>. (19b) shows that when the locative phrase *tsai*<sup>21</sup> *tçia*<sup>33</sup>*li* 'at home' is used, the sentence also has a progressive reading. (19c) shows that the locative phrase *tsai*<sup>21</sup> *tçia*<sup>33</sup>*li* 'at home' is not allowed to co-occur with preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>.

What is interesting is that generally, *ta*<sup>21</sup> can optionally combine with the progressive *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> in an activity predicate. The combination produces a progressive reading, and no completion reading is available. This is illustrated in (20).

- (20) a.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}$      $k^h\text{an}^{41}$      $ta^{21}$      $ti\text{ən}^{45}shi^{41}$ .  
           1SG    watch    TA    TV  
           'I watched TV.'
- b.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}$      $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$      $k^h\text{an}^{41}$      $ta^{21}$      $ti\text{ən}^{45}shi^{41}$ .  
           1SG    PROG    watch    TA    TV  
           'I am/keep watching TV.'
- c.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}$      $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$      $k^h\text{an}^{41}$      $ti\text{ən}^{45}shi^{41}$ .  
           1SG    PROG    watch    TV  
           'I am watching TV.'

In (20a), *ta*<sup>21</sup> indicates that the action has been completed/terminated. In this sentence, *ta*<sup>21</sup> functions as a perfective marker. In (20b), with the preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>, *ta*<sup>21</sup> can also appear. The sentence produces a reading of ongoingness. Note that *ta*<sup>21</sup> is not obligatory, but it leads to a slight difference in interpretation. If the *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> and *ta*<sup>21</sup> are used, the sentence emphasizes a continuation of the ongoing action; if only the progressive marker is used, the sentence only indicates that the action is going on. For instance: suppose that Lisi asks Tsansan to play ball with him, and Tsansan does not want to go, he would say (20b) rather than (20c). In uttering this sentence, Tsansan implies that he is already involved in watching TV, which is not going to stop, so he is not going to play ball with Lisi. In contrast, when Lisi asks Tsansan: "What are you doing?" Tsansan would answer the question with (20c) rather than (20b). So with the combination of *ta*<sup>21</sup> and the progressive marker *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>, the sentence focuses more on the continuation of an ongoing action, whereas if

only the progressive marker is used, the sentence just means that an action is ongoing, it is a description of an action in progress.

To show that *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be used in combination with the progressive marker *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>, more examples are given in (21) - (22).

- (21) a.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}\text{m}\text{ə}\text{n}^{13}$   $\text{t}\text{a}^{41}$   $\text{t}\text{a}^{21}$   $\text{m}\text{a}^{13}\text{t}\text{ɕ}\text{i}\text{a}\text{n}^{45}$ .  
 1PL play TA mahjong  
 'We played mahjong.'  
 NOT: 'We are playing mahjong.'
- b.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}\text{m}\text{ə}\text{n}^{13}$   $\text{t}\text{sai}^{21}\text{k}\text{o}^{24}$   $\text{t}\text{a}^{41}$   $\text{t}\text{a}^{21}$   $\text{m}\text{a}^{13}\text{t}\text{ɕ}\text{i}\text{a}\text{n}^{45}$ .  
 1PL PROG play TA mahjong  
 'We are playing mahjong.'  
 NOT: 'We played mahjong.'
- (22) a.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}\text{m}\text{ə}\text{n}^{13}$   $\text{t}\text{ɕ}^{h:41}$   $\text{t}\text{a}^{21}$   $\text{f}\text{a}\text{n}^{13}\text{t}\text{s}\text{i}$ .  
 1PL build PERF house  
 'We built a house.'  
 NOT: 'We are building a house.'
- b.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}\text{m}\text{ə}\text{n}^{13}$   $\text{t}\text{sai}^{21}\text{k}\text{o}^{24}$   $\text{t}\text{ɕ}^{h:41}$   $\text{t}\text{a}^{21}$   $\text{f}\text{a}\text{n}^{13}\text{t}\text{s}\text{i}$ .  
 1PL PROG build TA house  
 'We are building a house.'  
 NOT: 'We built a house.'

*ta*<sup>21</sup> in (21a) - (22a) can only be interpreted as a perfective marker, no other reading is available. In (21b) - (22b), the progressive marker *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is used, *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be used in combination with it, but now the sentence produces a progressive reading (with the same connotation as in (20): the sentence not only emphasizes the ongoingness of the action, but also indicates the continuation of it).

In sum, above, three cases with *ta*<sup>21</sup> are introduced. We have seen that in negative sentences with *ta*<sup>21</sup>, the sentences are interpreted as negating an ongoing action; in sentences with both *ta*<sup>21</sup> and manner (or instrumental adverbials), the events described can have either a completion or a progressive

reading; in sentences with both *ta*<sup>21</sup> and the preverbal progressive marker, the events described can only have a progressive reading.

In what follows I show another context, in which the interpretation of the sentences varies depending on whether *ta*<sup>21</sup> is used.

#### 2.2.2.4 *ta*<sup>21</sup> with sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>

The above shows that *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be combined with the preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> in a sentence with a progressive reading. In this section, I show that in Chángshā *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> can also appear in sentence final position (in section 2.6, I will provide an analysis to clarify its main function). What is relevant to this observation is that in a sentence describing an activity, *ta*<sup>21</sup> is obligatory. This is illustrated in (23).

- (23) a.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}\text{m}\text{ə}\text{n}^{13}$   $\text{t}\text{a}^{41}$   $\text{t}\text{a}^{21}$   $\text{m}\text{a}^{13}\text{t}\text{ɕ}\text{i}\text{a}\text{n}^{45}$   $\text{t}\text{s}\text{a}\text{i}^{21}\text{k}\text{o}^{24}$ .  
 IPL play TA mahjong TSAIKO  
 'We are playing mahjong.'  
 NOT: 'We played mahjong.'
- b.  $*\eta\text{o}^{41}\text{m}\text{ə}\text{n}^{13}$   $\text{t}\text{a}^{41}$   $\text{m}\text{a}^{13}\text{t}\text{ɕ}\text{i}\text{a}\text{n}^{45}$   $\text{t}\text{s}\text{a}\text{i}^{21}\text{k}\text{o}^{24}$ .  
 IPL play mahjong TSAIKO
- c.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}\text{m}\text{ə}\text{n}^{13}$   $\text{t}\text{a}^{41}$   $\text{t}\text{a}^{21}$   $\text{m}\text{a}^{13}\text{t}\text{ɕ}\text{i}\text{a}\text{n}^{45}$ .  
 IPL play TA mahjong  
 'We played mahjong.'  
 NOT: 'We are playing mahjong.'
- d.  $\text{t}\text{e}\text{i}^{54}\text{t}\text{s}^{\text{h}}\text{ə}^{33}$   $\text{f}\text{a}\text{n}^{33}$   $\text{t}\text{a}^{21}$   $\text{t}\text{s}\text{a}\text{i}^{21}\text{k}\text{o}^{24}$ .  
 car turn over TA TSAIKO  
 'The car turned over.'

In (23a), sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is used. In this case, as we see in (23b), *ta*<sup>21</sup> is obligatory, as opposed to the sentences in which preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is used, in which case, *ta*<sup>21</sup> is optional. Note that to produce a progressive reading in a sentence with *ta*<sup>21</sup>, sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> must be present. Otherwise, the sentence only has a perfective reading, as is shown in (23c) (the explanation of this interaction between sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is provided in Section 2.7.1).

In (23d), we have a different situation: the verb is an achievement, we have a perfective interpretation and *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is optional in this sentence (I will come back to it in section 2.6.3).

Note that I have mentioned in the beginning that in Mandarin with *holding* verbs, both the perfective marker *le* and durative marker *zhe* are acceptable. However in Chángshā, all we have is multi-functional *ta*<sup>21</sup>. Before I close off this introduction of the distribution and interpretation of *ta*<sup>21</sup> in different contexts, I will present a few examples to show the use of *ta*<sup>21</sup> with holding verbs.

### 2.2.3 *ta*<sup>21</sup>, a perfective or a durative marker: *ta*<sup>21</sup> with *holding* verbs

With holding verbs, *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be interpreted as a perfective marker; it can also be interpreted as an imperfective marker.

- (24) tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> tia<sup>24</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>13</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> lan<sup>24</sup>tsi .  
           take TA one CL basket  
 a. 'Tsansan was holding a basket.'  
 b. 'Tsansan took a basket.'

- (25) tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> tɕ<sup>h</sup>uan<sup>33</sup> ta<sup>24</sup> i<sup>24</sup> tɕian<sup>24</sup> xin<sup>33</sup> ts<sup>h</sup>ən<sup>45:33</sup> i .  
           wear TA one CL new shirt  
 a. 'Tsansan is wearing a new shirt.'  
 b. 'Tsansan put on a new shirt.'

In sentences (24) - (25), *ta*<sup>21</sup> can have two interpretations: on the one hand, it can indicate that the actions have been completed, on the other, it can also be interpreted as a durative marker, indicating the continuation of the state produced by the action after it has been completed. In the latter case, for example, in (24), if *ta*<sup>21</sup> is interpreted as a durative marker, the sentence means Tsansan was holding a basket.

That *ta*<sup>21</sup> can have these two interpretations can be shown in sentences involving adverbial modification.

- (26) a. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> tsuo<sup>13</sup> t'iən<sup>33</sup> tia<sup>24</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>13</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> lan<sup>24</sup> tsi .  
 yesterday take TA one CL basket  
 'Tsansan was holding a basket yesterday.'  
 'Tsansan took a basket yesterday.'
- b. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> i<sup>24</sup> tsi<sup>24</sup> tia<sup>24</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>13</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> lan<sup>24</sup> tsi .  
 continuously hold TA one CL basket  
 'Tsansan was holding a basket continuously.'

The sentence in (26a) is modified by the temporal adverb *tsuo*<sup>13</sup> *t'iən*<sup>33</sup> 'yesterday', and *ta*<sup>21</sup> can have two interpretations. By contrast, in (26b), the sentence is modified by the adverb *i*<sup>24</sup> *tsi*<sup>24</sup> 'continuously', and *ta*<sup>21</sup> can only be interpreted as a durative marker.

More examples can be seen with *placement* verbs such as *fan*<sup>45</sup> 'put', *kua*<sup>45</sup> 'hang', or *posture* verbs, like *tso*<sup>21</sup> 'sit', *tsan*<sup>45</sup> 'stand', and *tan*<sup>45</sup> 'lie' etc.

- (27) tso<sup>24</sup> tsi shan<sup>21</sup> fan<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>24</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
 desk on place TA one CL book  
 'A book was lying on the desk.'
- (28) mən<sup>13</sup> kou<sup>41</sup> tsan<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> xə<sup>24</sup> to<sup>33</sup> zən<sup>13</sup>.  
 door stand TA many people  
 'Many people were standing at the door.'  
 'Many people got/came to stand at the door.'

As indicated, *ta*<sup>21</sup> in (27) - (28) can be understood either as indicating the completion of the action or the duration of the state produced by the action. Take (28): if *ta*<sup>21</sup> is understood as a completive marker, the sentence means that a lot of people came to stand at the door; the sentence focuses on the completion of the action, and the speaker is not concerned with the result state. In a result state reading, on the other hand, the focus of the sentence is on the duration of the result state produced by the action, and the completion of the process is irrelevant.

To distinguish the two interpretations more clearly, we can use adverbs like  $xə^{41} k^h uai^{45}$  'very quickly' and quantification adverbs like  $tsən^{41} si^{24}$  'always', this is done in (29a)- (29b).

- (29) a.  $mən^{13} kou^{41} xə^{41} k^h uai^{54} tsən^{41} ta^{21} xə^{41} to^{33} zən^{13}$ .  
 door very quickly stand TA many people  
 'Many people came to stand at the door quickly.'
- b.  $mən^{13} kou^{41} tsən^{41} si^{21} tsən^{41} ta^{21} xə^{41} to^{33} zən^{13}$ .  
 door always stand TA many people  
 'Many people are always standing at the door.'

The adverb  $xə^{41} k^h uai^{45}$  'very quickly' is used in (29a), and  $ta^{21}$  can only have a completion reading; the reading of duration is not available. In (29b), the adverb  $tsən^{41} si^{24}$  'always' is used, and  $ta^{21}$  can only express the continuation of the result state; the completion reading is not available.

The above shows that with some verbs,  $ta^{21}$  can be interpreted as a durative marker as well as completion marker, or at least so it seems; we will briefly return to the *holding* verbs in 2.5 below. Comparatively, in Mandarin, in the same case, these two interpretations depend on whether *le* or *zhe* is used. I am going to provide an analysis for this multifunctionality of  $ta^{21}$  and its relation with *zhe* in Chapter 4.

#### 2.2.4 Summary

To sum up, in this section I have shown three types of contexts in which  $ta^{21}$  is used with different interpretations. I have shown that with non-stative predicates,  $ta^{21}$  is used to present an event as having been completed/terminated; whether  $ta^{21}$  can get a completion or termination reading depends among other things on the properties of the event. Generally,  $ta^{21}$  is not allowed with stative predicates. We have also seen that in similarly eventive sentences,  $ta^{21}$  can also be interpreted as a progressive marker. For  $ta^{21}$  to be interpreted as a progressive marker, though, we saw that it must always be accompanied by another element in the sentence. For convenience, the distribution and interpretation of  $ta^{21}$  is presented in table 1 (excluding

sentences with holding verbs, which form a special case as we just saw, and as we briefly see again in 2.5 below).

Table 1. Reading of  $ta^{21}$

	perfective	imperfective
with bare eventive predicate	√ e.g. (2b), (5)-(8)	*
with negation	*	√ e.g. (11b), (12b),(13b)
with manner adverbs	√ e.g. (15) - (18b)	√ e.g. (15) - (18)
with preverbal $tsai^{21}$ $ko^{24}$	*	√ e.g. (20b), (21b)
with sentence final $tsai^{21} ko^{24}$	*	√ e.g. (23c), (23d)

These observations are interesting: How can one marker express two notions (perfective and progressive) that seem so different? How can we keep the contrasting meanings of  $ta^{21}$  apart? Is there just one  $ta^{21}$ , which is, say, a perfective marker with the possibility of deriving the progressive reading from it (or the other way around)? Or are there two distinctive  $ta^{21}$ s which happen to have the same form? Before I provide an answer to these questions, let me first introduce the analyses available in the literature.

## 2.3 Literature introduction

### 2.3.1 $ta^{21}$ as a completive or a progressive/durative marker—a case of overlap

In the earlier literature, it is widely accepted that  $ta^{21}$  is multifunctional. It can be used to indicate that an action is terminated/completed, in progress or that it indicates the continuation of the state presented in the event (Li 1991; Wu 1999;

Lú 2007). Lǐ (1991) claims that "*ta*<sup>21</sup> has two functions: one is that it is used as a modal particle, and the other is that it is used as an aspect marker, when *ta*<sup>21</sup> is used as an aspect marker, it is equivalent to *zhe*, *le* in Mandarin ..." (interpreted from Lǐ 1991:540). In Zhōu (1998), *ta*<sup>21</sup> is treated as a past tense marker, equivalent to *le* in Mandarin (Zhōu 1998:9). Wu (1999) claims that "the usage of *ta*<sup>21</sup> as an aspectual marker is more or less the same as that of the standard Chinese *le* and *zhe*, where *le* is used as a Perf(ective) aspect marker, and *zhe* is used as a Con(tinuous) marker" (Wǔ 1999:59). Lú (2007) suggests that *ta*<sup>21</sup> is like *le*, *guo* (for experiential aspect), and *zhe* in Mandarin (Lú 2007:230).

Regarding the multiple aspectual functions of *ta*<sup>21</sup>, it is widely believed that the interpretation of *ta*<sup>21</sup> varies depending on the semantic "dynamicity feature" of the verbs it co-occurs with (Cuī 1997; Lú 2007). Cuī (1997) points out that if the verb *ta*<sup>21</sup> attaches to is dynamic, *ta*<sup>21</sup> is a perfective marker, while if the verb it attaches to is stative, *ta*<sup>21</sup> is interpreted as a durative marker. For example, since in (30a) the verb *tɕ<sup>h</sup>ia*<sup>24</sup> 'eat' is dynamic, *ta*<sup>21</sup> indicates that the action is completed; while in (30b), the verb *xui*<sup>45</sup> 'sleep' is static, and *ta*<sup>21</sup> expresses that the state of lying down continued.

- (30) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tɕ<sup>h</sup>ia<sup>24</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>13</sup> tsa<sup>13</sup> pin<sup>13</sup>ko<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG eat TA one CL apple  
           'He ate one apple.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup> tsuan<sup>13</sup> shan<sup>21</sup> xui<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           3SG LOC bed on sleep SFP  
           'He was sleeping on the bed.'

Lú (2007) makes the same claim as Cuī (1997). She suggests that *ta*<sup>21</sup> has a cross-categorical function when used as an aspect marker. In order to resolve the ambiguity, we need to rely on the semantics of the verb and the context (Lú 2007). Following Cuī (1997), Lú assumes that as a perfective marker, *ta*<sup>21</sup> follows a dynamic or instantaneous verb, e.g. *ɕi*<sup>41</sup> 'wash', *ts<sup>h</sup>an*<sup>45</sup> 'sing', *tsou*<sup>41</sup> 'walk', *xue*<sup>24</sup> 'say', *k<sup>h</sup>u*<sup>24</sup> 'cry', *tiao*<sup>45</sup> 'jump'. When appearing with a stative verb, *ta*<sup>21</sup> indicates the duration of a state. In her analysis, verbs of *posture*, *wearing* and *placement* such as *tso*<sup>21</sup> 'sit', *tsan*<sup>45</sup> 'stand', *kua*<sup>45</sup> 'hang', *k<sup>h</sup>ao*<sup>45</sup> 'lean', etc. are

classified as stative verbs (Lú 2007:233). Lú attributes the ambiguous interpretation of *ta*<sup>21</sup> to the context. She claims: "There are cases in which we need to make use of the contexts to distinguish the interpretation of *ta*<sup>21</sup>" (Lú 2007:233). (31) is from Lú(2007:233).

- (31) a. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup>la<sup>24</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> xu<sup>33</sup>pao<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           take TA one CL schoolbag leave KA PERF  
           'Tsansan took a schoolbag and left.'
- b. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> la<sup>24</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> xu<sup>33</sup> pao<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup> shou<sup>41</sup>li.  
           take TA one CL school-bag LOC hand in  
           'Tsansan is holding a schoolbag in his hand.'

According to Lú (2007), sentence (31a) contains two actions. Following the verb expressing the first action, *ta*<sup>21</sup> is a perfective marker. In (31b), the sentence describes a stative situation, possibly enforced by the locative phrase *tsai*<sup>21</sup> *shou*<sup>41</sup> *li* 'in his hand', with *ta*<sup>21</sup> indicating the duration of a state.

### 2.3.2 *ta*<sup>21</sup> as a "transition" marker

In contrast to the above analyses, I have suggested elsewhere that the multiple functions of *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be unified (Lǚ 2010). I proposed that *ta*<sup>21</sup> is a perfective marker, indicating the transition of an action/state from [-φ] to [φ] (Lǚ 2010:234). For example, sentence (30a) can be interpreted as meaning that Tsansan has gone from the state of not eating the apple to the state of having eaten the apple. Similarly, sentence (24) is interpreted as meaning that Tsansan has moved from the state of not holding a book to the state of holding a book. See (32) - (33).

- (32) tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> tɕ<sup>h</sup>ia<sup>24</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>45</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> pin<sup>13</sup>ko<sup>41</sup>.  
           eat TA that CL apple  
           'Tsansan ate that apple, (not necessary finished that apple).'

- (33) tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> tia<sup>24</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>13</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> lan<sup>24</sup> tsi .  
           take TA one CL basket  
 a. 'Tsansan is holding a basket.'  
 b. 'Tsansan took a basket.'

Under the transition approach, there is no need to wonder whether  $ta^{21}$  expresses an action as being terminated/completed, or whether it expresses the ongoing existence of the result state as is shown in (32) and (33). In both cases,  $ta^{21}$  is to indicate the transition from one state to another. For example in (33),  $ta^{21}$  indicates that Tsansan has changed from a state of not holding a basket to a state of holding a basket.

### 2.3.3 Summary

In section 2.3 I introduced two approaches from the literature to the use of  $ta^{21}$  as a perfective or imperfective marker. One of them argues that the verb feature "dynamicity" can be used to disambiguate the interpretation of  $ta^{21}$ . That is, if the verb which  $ta^{21}$  attaches to is dynamic,  $ta^{21}$  indicates that the action presented has been completed/terminated, while if the verb which it attaches to is stative,  $ta^{21}$  indicates the duration of the result state or the ongoingness of the action. Another approach proposes to reinterpret  $ta^{21}$  as indicating the transition of the action/state denoted by the verb from one state to another.

In what follows I evaluate these analyses in some detail and point out that the verb feature "dynamicity" is not a decisive factor in disambiguating the interpretation of  $ta^{21}$ . I also point out that the "transition" analysis in which  $ta^{21}$  is used to indicate that an event has changed from one state to another is not in itself sufficient to cover the variation in the interpretation of  $ta^{21}$ .

## 2.4 Critics of earlier accounts

### 2.4.1 "Dynamicity" is not relevant to $ta^{21}$

In this section, I provide a review of the traditional analysis of the variation in the interpretation of  $ta^{21}$ . I point out that there are four sets of data that can help

argue against the idea that the interpretation of *ta*<sup>21</sup> is dependent on the verb feature 'dynamicity'.

First, I would like to point out that *ta*<sup>21</sup> does not necessarily indicate that an action has been terminated/completed even if the verb it attaches to is dynamic. For example, as we have seen, in sentences modified by a manner adverb, *ta*<sup>21</sup> cannot only indicate the completion of the action but also its ongoingness ((34) - (35)).

- (34) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>45</sup> pən<sup>45</sup> xu<sup>33</sup>.  
 3SG read TA that CL book  
 'He read that book.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> zən<sup>21</sup>zən<sup>21</sup>tsən<sup>33</sup>tsən<sup>33</sup>ti k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>45</sup> pən<sup>45</sup> xu<sup>33</sup>.  
 3SG attentively read TA that CL book  
 'He is reading that book attentively.'  
 'He read that book attentively.'
- (35) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> uan<sup>21</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>41</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup>.  
 3SG look TA that CL book  
 'He took a look at the book.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tai<sup>33</sup>tai<sup>33</sup>ti<sup>21</sup> uan<sup>21</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>41</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup>.  
 3SG attentively look TA that CL book  
 'He is looking at that book attentively.'  
 'He took a look at that book attentively.'

The verbs in (34) - (35) are all activities. Contrary to what is suggested by the traditional analysis, *ta*<sup>21</sup> in (34b) - (35b) either indicates the completion or the ongoingness of the action. (34) - (35) show that the apparently ambiguous interpretation of *ta*<sup>21</sup> cannot be attributed to the semantic feature "dynamicity" of verbs, since the verbs in (34) - (35) are all dynamic, and when they are followed by *ta*<sup>21</sup>, the sentences cannot only produce a completion reading, but also a progressive reading.

That the interpretation of *ta*<sup>21</sup> is not dependent on "dynamicity" is also confirmed by the observation that in activities modified by sentence final

*tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>, *ta*<sup>21</sup> can only be interpreted as a progressive marker. We have seen such sentences above. More examples can be seen in (36).

- (36) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup>.  
 3SG wash TA clothes TSAIKO  
 'He is washing clothes.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> kai<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> fan<sup>13</sup>tsi tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup>.  
 3SG build TA house TSAIKO  
 'He is building (a) house(s).'

The verbs ɕi<sup>41</sup> 'wash' and kai<sup>45</sup> 'build' are dynamic verbs, yet *ta*<sup>21</sup> is not interpreted as a perfective marker. This shows that we cannot relate the interpretation of *ta*<sup>21</sup> to the properties of the predicates *ta*<sup>21</sup> attaches to. Note that for (36), one may argue that possibly the progressive reading comes from sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>, but in section 2.6.2, we will argue that this is not the case.

The third set of data which show that the interpretation of *ta*<sup>21</sup> does not vary in accordance with the dynamic properties of verbs comes from the use of *ta*<sup>21</sup> in *posture*, *wearing* and *placement* verbs. In the traditional analysis, these verbs are treated as stative predicates (Lu ó 2006:22). However, we know that the properties of these verbs are debatable: at least some *posture* verbs can be seen as being dynamic if the subject is agentive. What is relevant is that following these verbs, *ta*<sup>21</sup> is actually better treated as a perfective marker in a-sentences in (37) - (38) (37 is adapted from (29)).

- (37) a. mən<sup>13</sup> kou<sup>41</sup> i<sup>13</sup> xia<sup>21</sup> tsi tsan<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> xə<sup>41</sup> to<sup>33</sup> zən<sup>13</sup>.  
 door suddenly stand TA many people  
 'Many people came to stand at the door all of a sudden.'
- b. mən<sup>13</sup> kou<sup>41</sup> xə<sup>41</sup> to<sup>33</sup> zən<sup>13</sup> tsan<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
 door many people stand TA  
 'There are many people standing at the door.'

- (38) a. tsuo<sup>24</sup> tsi shan<sup>21</sup> i<sup>41</sup>tɕin<sup>33</sup> fan<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>24</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup>.  
 desk on already place TA one CL book  
 'A book has already been placed on the desk.'
- b. i<sup>24</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup> tsuo<sup>24</sup>tsi shan<sup>21</sup> fan<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
 one CL book LOC desk on place TA  
 'A book is lying on the desk.'

In Lǐ (1991), Zhōu (1998), Wú (1999) and X.Q.Lú (2007), the verbs in these sentences are seen as stative verbs, and *ta*<sup>21</sup> is argued to be a durative marker. However, while the a-examples already show that this cannot be the whole story, we could even argue that with verbs like these, the non-perfective reading of *ta*<sup>21</sup> is actually derived from the perfective *ta*<sup>21</sup>. We have reached a certain state by the completion of an event (e.g., getting up or putting down) and the supposed durative reading is the continuing existence of the result state.

Fourthly, if it is true that *ta*<sup>21</sup> indicates the continuation of a state with stative verbs, we would expect that *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be used in states described by general stative verbs. This is, however not the case. *ta*<sup>21</sup> cannot be used to indicate the duration of a state expressed by a stative verb. This is illustrated in (39).

- (39) a. \*ta<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup> Shan<sup>41</sup>xai<sup>41</sup> tɕu<sup>21</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
 3SG LOC Shanghai live TA
- b. ta<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup> Shan<sup>41</sup>xai<sup>41</sup> tɕu<sup>21</sup>.  
 3SG LOC Shanghai live  
 'He lives in Shanghai.'

The verb *tɕu*<sup>21</sup> 'live' in (39) is a stative verb, and *ta*<sup>21</sup> cannot be used. If *ta*<sup>21</sup> is able to indicate the continuation of a state in a stative predicate, (39a) should be acceptable. However, this is not the case: (39a) is ungrammatical.

Finally, the traditional analysis fails to account for the fact that *ta*<sup>21</sup> is compatible with the progressive aspect which is indicated by preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>. Progressive aspect selects non-stative predicates, so the compatibility of *ta*<sup>21</sup> with the progressive makes it impossible to maintain the idea that *ta*<sup>21</sup> expresses the perfective meaning in dynamic predicates. Since

progressive and perfective are semantically contrasting, it is hard to justify the combination of the two if we maintain that  $ta^{21}$  is perfective, and can only be perfective with dynamic verbs.

To sum up, the above arguments show that it is not sensible to attribute the multiple functions of  $ta^{21}$  to the verb feature "dynamicity". With one and the same "dynamicity" verb,  $ta^{21}$  can be interpreted as perfective or progressive, or in any case, it is compatible with a non-perfective reading, like in sentences with certain adverbs or with sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ .

#### 2.4.2 $ta^{21}$ is not a "transition" marker

To deal with the observation that  $ta^{21}$  is used to express the perfective or imperfective aspect, I tried before to unify the multiple uses of  $ta^{21}$  by proposing that  $ta^{21}$  is basically a perfective marker (Lǚ 2010). I argued that the main function of  $ta^{21}$  is to indicate that the denoted event or state has completed a transition from one state to another. By arguing that  $ta^{21}$  is a transition marker, I avoid the ambiguous status of  $ta^{21}$ . However, this approach is far from satisfactory. This is because there are data that the "transition" approach fails to account for. For example, in an activity modified by the negative marker,  $ta^{21}$  can only indicate the duration of the action. See (40).

- (40) a.  $t^h a^{33}$   $k^h an^{45}$   $ta^{21}$   $tian^{45} si^{41}$ .  
           3SG   watch   TA   TV  
           'He watched TV.'
- b.  $t^h a^{33}$     $mau^{21}$   $k^h an^{45}$   $ta^{21}$   $tian^{45} si^{41}$ .  
           3SG   NEG watch   TA   TV  
           'He is not watching TV.'  
           NOT: 'He did not watch TV.'

If  $ta^{21}$  is a transition marker, it is not clear why  $ta^{21}$  is used as a perfective marker in (40a), whereas it is used as a progressive marker in (40b). Furthermore, the transition approach cannot provide an account for the combination of  $ta^{21}$  with the progressive marker, preverbal  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ . The reason is as mentioned above, that it is hard to justify the combination of two

particles with contrasting meanings. Given these considerations, I conclude that the transition approach leaves too many questions open.

### 2.4.3 Intermezzo: $ta^{21}$ as a marker of "posttime"

Under the single  $ta^{21}$  hypothesis, we may entertain another possibility (which seems reasonable but which eventually will be discarded). We may argue that  $ta^{21}$  is a "marked" perfective marker. With the expression "marked" perfective marker, we mean a marker that indicates not only the completion of the action but also the continuation of the result state caused by the action. This definition of perfective marker is different from what Comrie (1976) has defined, which we call unmarked perfective. That is, we take the unmarked perfective as "indicating the view of a situation as a single whole without distinction of the various phases that make up that situation" (Comrie 1976:16). Similarly, Smith (1991) claims that the perfective represents a situation as a single whole, and the span of the perfective includes the initial and final-endpoint of the situation (Smith 1991:103). As a "marked" perfective marker,  $ta^{21}$  does not only indicate termination/completion of an event but also the period after the completion. This seems plausible since we have seen that normally, in non-stative predicates,  $ta^{21}$  is used to express the perfective meaning. Only under specific circumstances can  $ta^{21}$  be interpreted as indicating the continuation/ongoingness of an action. This approach can provide a direct account for *posture*, *wearing*, *holding* and *placement* verbs as these verbs share the property of typically producing a result state after the actions are completed. With all these verbs,  $ta^{21}$  can have two interpretations: it can be interpreted as indicating the completion of an action and it also can be interpreted as indicating the continuation of the result state. With the proposed analysis, we can argue that the continuation of the state is part of the function of  $ta^{21}$ : it indicates not only the endpoint of the action but also the time span after the completion of the action.

The observation that verbs produce result states after the action has been completed is not restricted to Chángshā. In dealing with the perfective in Dēne Sūliné Chipewyan, an Athabaskan language of Northern Canada, Wilhelm (2007) points out that the common analysis of the perfective, in which a

situation is presented as a whole, does not work for the perfective in Däne. This is because according to her, in Däne, activities entail not only termination but also event completion when they appear in the perfective (Wilhelm 2007:49). Wilhelm points out that "in Däne, activities have the same completion interpretation as accomplishments. She says that "it would certainly be undesirable to assume that a viewpoint aspect contributes situation aspectual meaning" (Wilhelm 2007:51). Following Klein (1994) and Parsons (1990), Wilhelm (2007) proposes that the Däne perfective focuses not only on the entire situation time, but also on the "posttime" of the situation. She does not define what "posttime" is in detail, but provide (42), from where we understand it as the time after the change of the state. (41) is used to show the denotation of unmarked perfective. (41) - (42) are from Wilhelm (2007:49).

(41) Unmarked Perfective

.....[TT-{TSit.....}-].....>

(42) Däne Completive Perfective

.....[TT-{TSit.....}-]+++++>  
posttime

According to Wilhelm (2007), at a "posttime" of TSit (Situation time), the situation has already come to an end. Since perfective includes a "posttime", every TT (Topic time) contains a change of state, namely from  $\phi$  (as denoted by the lexical verb, and true in TSit), to  $\neg\phi$  (true through the "posttime", and part of the denotation of the perfective verb) (Wilhelm 2007:52-53). Her evidence comes from the morphology and semantics of positional statives (*sit*, *lie*, etc.). She observes that these verbs inflect for imperfective and perfective: *the* is for imperfective and *ghe* is for perfective. The stem may also change. She points out that these positional statives with imperfective meaning are morphologically perfective and denote the result state of completed action or event (Wilhelm 2007:52). Wilhelm (2007) illustrates her proposal with (43) - (44). (43a) is the stative use of the verb in the imperfective and (43b) is the non-stative use of the verb in the perfective (from Wilhelm 2007:52-53).

- (43) nonstative
- a. Nesd á  
 Ne-Ø-1s-cl-stem:sg sit  
 'I am sitting down (in the process)' IMPF
- b. Nida  
 ne-(the-)i - Ø- da  
 th-CM-1s- cl- stem:sg sit  
 'I sat down.' PERF
- (44) stative
- a. thida  
 the-i- Ø-da  
 CM-1s-cl-stem:sg sit  
 'I am sitting (I sat down and am now sitting)' IMPF
- b. Ghid á  
 ghe-i - Ø- d á  
 CM-1s-cl-stem:sg sit  
 'I sat/was sitting (now I don't anymore)' PERF

According to Wilhelm, the imperfective stative form in (44a) has the same stem and the same Conjugation Marker (CM) (although invisible here) as the perfective non-stative form in (43b); thus it is morphologically a perfective (Wilhelm 2007: 53). In (44a) the meaning of the imperfective stative phrase, whose paraphrase is: *I sat down and am now sitting* indicates that the verb denotes the result, or "posttime", of a sitting down event, it is like the meaning in (43b).

Having introduced the "posttime" approach, in which the perfective marker does not only indicate the completion of the action, but also the result state, let us return to our observations and see whether we can make use of this "posttime" approach. At first sight, this analysis would seem to allow us to account for the use of *ta*<sup>21</sup> in result states and *holding*, *posture*, and *wearing* verbs. For example, we can argue that verbs like *tso*<sup>21</sup> 'sit', *tsan*<sup>45</sup> 'stand', *la*<sup>13</sup> 'hold', and *pei*<sup>33</sup> 'carry' share the property that they produce a result state after

the actions have been completed. Therefore, the stative reading of *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be seen as part of the denotation of the perfective.

From the examples in (43) - (44), we can see that the case of Dǎn seems like that of Chángshā, in that the perfective realized on certain verbs indicates not only the completion of the action, but also the continuation of the result state. Superficially, it seems that we can treat *ta*<sup>21</sup> as a marked perfective indicating the "posttime" as is proposed in Wilhelm (2007). However, I have at least four arguments against this "posttime" approach. First, if we assume the "posttime" analysis, we would expect the "posttime" reading of *ta*<sup>21</sup> to appear not only in verbs such as *tso*<sup>21</sup> 'sit' and *tsan*<sup>45</sup> 'stand', but also with other predicates. This is not, however, the case. We saw that in Chángshā, *ta*<sup>21</sup> normally produces a termination reading with activity verbs, and a completion reading with accomplishment verbs. We have seen some examples above. Some of them are again presented in (45).

- (45) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> uan<sup>13</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tian<sup>45</sup> iou<sup>13</sup>.  
           3SG play TA electric game  
           'He played electric game.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>24</sup> pu<sup>21</sup> tian<sup>45</sup> in<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG swim<sub>v</sub> TA one CL film  
           'He saw a movie.'

*ta*<sup>21</sup> in (45a) can only be interpreted as a termination marker. No completion reading is available, let alone a "posttime" reading. In (45b), it means completion, as indicated.

A second argument relates to the observation that *ta*<sup>21</sup> is compatible with action verbs in the progressive, where it does not produce a result state. This can be seen in (46).

- (46) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> i<sup>24</sup>tsi<sup>24</sup> uan<sup>13</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> iou<sup>13</sup>xi<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG continuously play TA game  
           'He is playing games continuously.'

b.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}\text{m}\text{ə}\text{n}^{13}$   $ta^{41}$   $ta^{21}$   $ma^{13}\text{t}\check{\text{c}}\text{i}\text{a}\text{n}^{45}$   $\text{tsai}^{21}\text{k}\text{o}^{24}$ .  
 1PL          play    TA    mahjong          TSAIKO  
 'We are playing mahjong.'

In (46a) - (46b),  $ta^{21}$  can only be interpreted as a progressive marker. This makes it difficult to relate the interpretation of  $ta^{21}$  to the completion of an action; it is even less possible to indicate "posttime": the result state of the completion of the action.

Thirdly, we have seen that in activities,  $ta^{21}$  can always be used if the sentence appears in the progressive.

(47)  $\eta\text{o}^{41}\text{m}\text{ə}\text{n}^{13}$   $\text{tsai}^{21}\text{k}\text{o}^{24}$   $ta^{41}$   $ta^{21}$   $ma^{13}\text{t}\check{\text{c}}\text{i}\text{a}\text{n}^{45}$ .  
 1PL          PROG          play    TA          mahjong  
 'We are playing mahjong.'  
 Not: 'We played mahjong.'

In (47),  $ta^{21}$  is combined with the progressive marker, preverbal  $\text{tsai}^{21}\text{k}\text{o}^{24}$ . Perfective and progressive are two aspects with contrasting meanings. If it was a perfective marker of the sort in (44a), the combination of the progressive marker  $\text{tsai}^{21}\text{k}\text{o}^{24}$  with  $ta^{21}$  should not be allowed. The combination in (47) shows that  $ta^{21}$  cannot be a perfective marker in the sentence.

#### 2.4.4 Summary

Above, I first pointed out that relating the ambiguity of  $ta^{21}$  to the verb feature "dynamicity" is not satisfactory, since sentences with  $ta^{21}$  and a non-stative predicate are ambiguous between a perfective and progressive reading. Apparently, the "dynamicity" feature is not the decisive factor for distinguishing between the various interpretations of  $ta^{21}$ . I then pointed out that it is not sensible to treat  $ta^{21}$  as a "transition" marker, nor a marked perfective marker indicating not only the endpoint but also the time after the completion of the action. In what follows, I provide a new analysis to account for the use of  $ta^{21}$ . I start out from arguing for the existence of two particles:  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ , then I provide an analysis to distinguish the two.

2.5  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ 

In this section, I will show that  $ta^{21}$  should not be treated exclusively as a perfective particle; instead, I argue that there are two  $ta^{21}$ s in Chángshā: a perfective marker and a progressive marker. Before I present my analysis, I first point out that  $ta^{21}$  is not used as a durative marker. The imperfective reading of  $ta^{21}$  in *placement*, *holding*, *posture* and *wearing* verbs is derived from the use of  $ta^{21}$  as a perfective marker.

I have two reasons to argue for this view. First, I observe that the meaning of the sentences is very closely related to the perfective: it is the continuing existence of the result state; it is somewhat like the "posttime" as mentioned above. Some relevant examples are repeated here.

- (48) a. tso<sup>24</sup> tsi shan<sup>21</sup> fan<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>24</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
 desk on put TA one CL book  
 'A book was put on the desk.'
- b. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> tia<sup>13</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>24</sup> ko<sup>41</sup> lan<sup>24</sup> tsi.  
 lift TA one CL basket  
 'Tsansan lifted a basket.'

In the earlier literature, the  $ta^{21}$  in (48) is interpreted as an imperfective marker indicating the result state of the actions. However,  $ta^{21}$  in these sentences is better treated as a perfective marker, and the result state reading is derived from the perfective: the action is completed, and the result state continues. This reading only happens with certain verbs like *placement*, *holding*, *posture*, *wearing* etc. These verbs are different from *do*, *wash*, *watch* etc. These latter verbs are simple activities, while verbs like *lift* and *put on* are more like accomplishment verbs in the sense that they have a natural endpoint: once you have put something on, you are wearing it, once you have lifted something, you are carrying it, once you have taken something, you are holding it. So in (48), the result state meaning does not come from the perfective alone: it is the result of a combination of the perfective and this particular type of verb: after the completion of the action, the result state stays. This result state reading does not happen with activity verbs like *do*, *watch*, *wash*, etc. Secondly, as we have

seen in the very beginning of the chapter, in the cases (specifically, *holding*, *wearing* verbs etc.) where  $ta^{21}$  is interpreted as an imperfective marker, *le* in Mandarin can also be used this way. There is no difference in the interpretation of the sentences.

- (49) a. zhuōzi shàng fàng zhe/le yī běn shū. (*Mandarin*)  
 desk on put IMP/PERF one CL book  
 'A book was lying put on the desk.'
- b. tsānsān tí zhe/le yī gè lǎnzi.  
 lift IMP/PERF one CL basket  
 'Tsansan was carrying a basket.'

So from now on, I leave  $ta^{21}$  indicating continuation of the result states out of the discussion. I will only be concerned with distinguishing the perfective  $ta^{21}$  ( $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ ), indicating the completion/termination of actions, from the imperfective  $ta^{21}$  ( $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ ), indicating the ongoingness of actions.

The main arguments for the postulation of two  $ta^{21}$ s are based on three observations: the use of  $ta^{21}$  with predicates modified by certain adverbs; the use of  $ta^{21}$  with negation; and its use in sentences with preverbal and sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ . We have seen most of the material above. Here we put it together in one place.

### 2.5.1 $ta^{21}$ with negation

We have seen in section 2.2.2.1 that  $ta^{21}$  can be used in negative sentences, but only in sentences with the progressive reading.

- (50) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG watch TA TV  
 'He watched TV.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG NEG watch TA TV  
 'He is not watching TV.'  
 NOT: 'He did not watch TV.'

- c. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG NEG watch TV  
 'He did not watch TV.'

*ta*<sup>21</sup> in (50a) is used as a perfective marker, and the action is understood as having been completed. In (50b), where the negative marker *mau*<sup>21</sup> is used, *ta*<sup>21</sup> can still appear, in which case, however, *ta*<sup>21</sup> cannot be interpreted as a perfective marker, but only as a progressive marker. In (50c), the negative marker *mau*<sup>21</sup> is used without *ta*<sup>21</sup>, and the sentence only has completion reading.

Chángshā *mau*<sup>21</sup> is similar to Mandarin *mā* (*yǒu*) 'not have', in which *yǒu* 'have' is the marker of the perfective, the counterpart of *le* in negative sentences (Wang 1965). *yǒu* is often omitted, just leaving *mā* 'not', but the association with *yǒu* remains, so *mā* then means 'not have'. In Mandarin *mā* (*yǒu*) 'not have' cannot co-occur with the perfective marker *le* because both *yǒu* 'have' and *le* are both perfective markers. For example, the counterpart of (50) in Mandarin is (51).

- (51) a. tā kàn le diànshì  
 3SG watch PERF TV  
 'He watched TV.'
- b. \* tā méi (*yǒu*) kàn le diànshì.  
 3SG NEG have watch PERF TV  
 Intended: 'He did not watch TV.'
- c. tā méi (*yǒu*) kàn diànshì  
 3SG NEG have watch TV  
 'He did not watch TV.'

So *le* and its negative counterpart *mā* (*yǒu*) cannot co-occur. The same can be said of the counterparts of *le* and *mā* (*yǒu*) 'not have' in Chángshā, *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> and *mau*<sup>21</sup> respectively: perfective *ta*<sup>21</sup> and negative perfective *mau*<sup>21</sup> cannot co-occur, as is clear from (50), which corresponds to the Mandarin situation in (51). This leads to the conclusion that the *ta*<sup>21</sup> we do find with *mau*<sup>21</sup> cannot be perfective *ta*<sup>21</sup>. It must be another marker and, as we noted above, the meaning of these sentences suggests that it is a marker of the progressive.

2.5.2 *ta*<sup>21</sup> with adverbial modifiers

As shown in section 2.2.2.2, with an activity verb modified by a manner adverb, *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be interpreted as a progressive marker and it also can be interpreted as a perfective marker. This is once again illustrated in (52) - (53).

- (52) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tɿən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG watch TA TV  
           'He watched TV.'  
           NOT: 'He is watching TV.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> zən<sup>21</sup>zən<sup>21</sup>tsən<sup>33</sup>tsən<sup>33</sup>ti k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tɿən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG attentively watch TA TV  
           'He watched TV attentively.'  
           'He is watching TV attentively.'
- (53) a. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> ɕi<sup>33</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu.  
           wash TA clothes  
           'Tsansan washed his clothes.'
- b. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> xə<sup>41</sup>pu<sup>41</sup> tɕin<sup>13</sup>iuan<sup>21</sup>ti ɕi<sup>33</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu.  
           very NEG willingly wash TA clothes  
           'Tsansan washed his clothes very unwillingly.'  
           'Tsansan is washing his clothes very unwillingly.'

In (52a), *ta*<sup>21</sup> can only have one interpretation; while in (52b), in which the sentence is modified by the manner adverb *zən*<sup>21</sup>*zən*<sup>21</sup>*tsən*<sup>33</sup>*tsən*<sup>33</sup>*ti* 'attentively', both the progressive and the completion reading of *ta*<sup>21</sup> are available (52b). The same is true in (53b), where the adverb *pu*<sup>41</sup> *tɕin*<sup>13</sup>*iuan*<sup>21</sup>*ti* 'unwillingly' is used and the sentence has two readings. In (53a), where there is no adverb, the sentence has only one reading. The observation that *ta*<sup>21</sup> is ambiguous can also be made in the sentences modified by locative or instrumental adverbs. This can be seen in (54) - (55).

- (54) t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup>mən tsai<sup>21</sup> la<sup>45</sup>li tɕi<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> fan<sup>13</sup>tsi.  
 3PL LOC there build TA house  
 'They built houses there (the houses have been built).'  
 'They are building houses (in the process of building houses).'
- (55) t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> in<sup>21</sup> tsuo<sup>41</sup>sou<sup>41</sup> ɕiə<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tsi<sup>21</sup>.  
 3SG use left hand write TA character  
 'He wrote characters with his left hand.'  
 'He was writing with his left hand.'

In (54) - (55), a locative phrase or instrumental adverb is used, and *ta*<sup>21</sup> can have either of the two readings.

### 2.5.3 *ta*<sup>21</sup> with pre-verbal and sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>

Our third observation has to do with the use of *ta*<sup>21</sup> with preverbal and sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>. In section 2.2.2.3, we pointed out that preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is a progressive marker in Chángshā. We saw that *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be used with preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>, in which case the sentence produces a progressive reading. If *ta*<sup>21</sup> is a perfective marker, it is hard to explain the combination with the preverbal progressive marker *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>.

Furthermore, to treat *ta*<sup>21</sup> exclusively as a perfective marker is also questionable if we consider the use of *ta*<sup>21</sup> in activities modified with sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>. We know that when sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is used in sentences containing an activity verb and *ta*<sup>21</sup>, the action can only be interpreted as ongoing, which is not the case for sentences with an achievement. Though it is not clear yet whether the progressive reading comes from *ta*<sup>21</sup> or *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> (we will get to that below), for the following examples we first point out that it is not sensible to treat *ta*<sup>21</sup> as a perfective.

- (56) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup>.  
 3SG watch TA TV TSAIKO  
 'He is watching TV.'  
 NOT: 'He watched TV.'

- b.  $t^h a^{33}$   $t\check{c}i^{41}$   $ta^{21}$   $i^{24}$   $t\check{a}n^{45}$   $fan^{13}tsi^{41}$  ( $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ )  
 3SG build TA one CL house TSAIKO  
 'He has built a house.'

The action in (56a) can only be interpreted as ongoing, while in (56b) it can only be interpreted as having been completed. Both sentences have  $ta^{21}$  and  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ , but in (56b)  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  is not obligatory. Apparently, in (56b), the presence or absence of  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  makes no difference for the interpretation of the sentence; it does not seem to contribute any meaning at all (but see below). In (56a), its presence or absence does make a difference: only with  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  present do we get the progressive reading. However, we cannot conclude from this that the progressive reading comes from  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ , since in order to get the progressive reading,  $ta^{21}$  is also obligatory, so the progressive reading might as well come from  $ta^{21}$ . In other words, sentences with  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  do not lead to the conclusion that  $ta^{21}$  is always a perfective marker and indeed may lead to the conclusion that it sometimes is not, and that in those cases it is a progressive marker. In section 2.6.2, we will argue that the sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  is not a marker of the progressive. There are cases in which  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  is used without producing a progressive reading. This can already be seen in (56b) above: in an accomplishment event,  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  is optional, and the sentence produces a completion reading.

In view of the above, I conclude that it is better not to treat  $ta^{21}$  exclusively as a perfective marker. Instead, I propose that there are two markers that share the same form:  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$ , a perfective marker, and  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$ , a progressive marker.

In taking this "two  $ta^{21}$ s" approach, I am left with two questions to answer:

1) How can we tell the two particles apart?

2) We have seen that when  $ta^{21}$  is used as a progressive marker, the sentence always needs some extra elements (e.g. preverbal or sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ , negation, or adverbial modification), while this is not the case for the use of  $ta^{21}$  as a perfective marker. The question is: What properties do these contexts share, which enable them to license  $ta^{21}$  to be used as a progressive marker (because that is what they seem to do)?

To answer these questions, I would like to start with the use of  $ta^{21}$  with sentence final particle  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ . Since we have seen above that a sentence modified by sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  can get a progressive reading and that on the face of it, it is not clear where the reading of ongoingness comes from, it is possible that  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  produces the reading of ongoingness, in which case we need to determine what  $ta^{21}$  is used for. Alternatively,  $ta^{21}$  is the progressive marker, we need to see what the function of  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  is.

In what follows I first argue against the two traditional views on the use of sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ , one of which treats it as a sentence final mood particle, while the other takes it as a progressive marker, the same marker as the preverbal  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ . I subsequently provide an analysis of the semantic interpretation of sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ .

#### 2.5.4 Summary

In this section, I have argued for the claim that there exist two particles,  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ . I first showed that in sentences modified by some manner adverbs, two interpretations are available, while in sentences modified by the preverbal progressive marker and negative adverbs,  $ta^{21}$  can only be interpreted as progressive. Our analysis has shown that whenever  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is used, it always needs some other elements to accompany it. In the analysis presented below, we are going to show that these 'other elements' share something that makes it possible for  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  to be used.

### 2.6 Interpreting sentence final $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$

#### 2.6.1 Is sentence final $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ a mood particle?

Mandarin, just like most other varieties of Chinese, has a number of discourse-oriented particles appearing at the end of a sentence to express the speaker's mood, attitude and emotion. They are referred to as mood particles, and treated as heads of functional projections in the CP domain (Li 2006).

Following Li (2006), in the present thesis, I assume that there is a functional projection, MoodP, expressing the illocutionary force in C. For instance, sentence final particle *ne* in Mandarin, as well as its cognate *le* in Chángshā, indicates an affirmative mood; they are supposed to head a C-projection.

In the traditional analysis, the sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> in Chángshā is sometimes treated as a sentence final particle, used to express the affirmative force of the sentence (Qú2007). Pointing at sentences like (57) - (58) (from Qú 2007:53), Qú observes that *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is optional: it can be omitted without consequences for the grammaticality of the sentence.

- (57) mən<sup>24</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ai<sup>33</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> (tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup>).  
 door open TA TSAIKO  
 'The door has been opened.'

- (58) tɕ<sup>h</sup>ian<sup>13</sup>shan<sup>21</sup> kua<sup>54</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> xua<sup>21</sup> (tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup>).  
 wall on hang TA picture TSAIKO  
 'There are pictures hanging on the wall.'

Qú (1997) suggests that it is only used for the purpose of emphasis, and that, as such, it can be treated as a mood particle.

The idea that sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> (or *tsai*<sup>21</sup>, the variety of *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>*li* 'here', in other dialects) is treated as a mood particle is not new in the literature on dialects. For example, Wú (1998) holds that in the Wūhàn dialect, sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup> expresses an affirmative force. Xiāng (2000) treats sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup> in the Yīngshān dialect in the same way.

However, I do not think that *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> in Chángshā functions as an affirmative mood marker. (57) - (58) cover only part of the usage of *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>. In fact, as we have seen, for an action to be represented as ongoing, *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is obligatory. (56a) is repeated as (59).

- (59) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup>.  
 3SG watch TA TV TSAIKO  
 'He is watching TV.'

- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG watch TA TV  
 NOT: 'He is watching TV.'  
 'He watched TV.'

In (59), *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> can be left out; however, if it is left out, the progressive reading of the sentence becomes unavailable: compare (59a) with (59b). The minimal pair in (59) shows that *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> plays a role in whether a sentence that also contains *ta*<sup>21</sup> can have a progressive meaning. Given the established analysis of mood particles, in which a mood particle can be deleted without affecting the grammaticality of the sentence, it does not seem to be sensible to treat sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> as a mood particle.

### 2.6.2 Sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> ≠ preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>

Traditionally, linguists often argued that both pre-verbal and sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> are progressive markers (Hè 1997). The main reason is that with both particles a sentence can have a reading of the progressive (Hè 1997). (55a) - (55b) are repeated in (60a) - (60b), in (60c) the preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is given.

- (60) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup>.  
 3SG watch TA TV TSAIKO  
 'He is watching TV.'  
 b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG watch TA TV  
 'He watched TV.'  
 c. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG TSAIKO watch TA TV  
 'He is watching TV.'

In (60b), *ta*<sup>21</sup> is used as a perfective marker, in (60a), where sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is added, the action described is interpreted as ongoing, in (60c), the sentence is presented in the progressive aspect by preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>. So the question arising from these sentences is: Where does the progressive reading in

(60a) come from? We might argue that the ongoingness reading comes from sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>, since what distinguishes (60a) from (60b) is the fact that sentence final *tsai*<sup>24</sup>*ko*<sup>21</sup> is added to the former, with the meaning change as a consequence. If sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> expresses the ongoingness of the action, we can argue that *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> has turned the sentence into a progressive. In that case, we can say that both the preverbal and sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> are used as a progressive marker (Hè 1997). However, this hypothesis quickly turns out to be untenable. I have at least five arguments for not treating sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> in the same way as preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>. The first consideration is that there are predicates, mostly certain types of stative predicates, that are compatible with sentence final, but not with preverbal, *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>, as is exemplified in (61).

- (61) a.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}$      $\text{lau}^{41}$   $\text{ko}^{24}$      $\text{t}^{\text{h}}\text{ən}^{45}$      $\text{ta}^{21}$      $\text{tsai}^{21}\text{ko}^{24}$ .  
           1SG    head            ache            TA        TSAIKO  
           'I am having a headache.'
- b. \* $\eta\text{o}^{41}$      $\text{tsai}^{21}\text{ko}^{24}$      $\text{lau}^{41}\text{k}^{\text{h}}\text{o}^{24}$      $\text{t}^{\text{h}}\text{ən}^{45}$      $\text{ta}^{21}$ .  
           1SG    PROG            head            ache        TA
- c. \* $\eta\text{o}^{41}$              $\text{tsai}^{21}\text{ko}^{24}$      $\text{lau}^{41}$   $\text{k}^{\text{h}}\text{o}^{24}$      $\text{t}^{\text{h}}\text{ən}^{45}$ .  
           1SG            TSAIKO            head            ache

In principle, there are two possible explanations. One is to assume that they are both progressive markers and that differences between them are related to their different positions. The other is that they are not the same elements, for instance, that, unlike preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>, sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is not a progressive marker. This could explain (61), in which the real progressive marker, preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>, is not allowed in front of the stative predicate; after all, despite the translation, states generally do not co-occur with the progressive.

Secondly, that the two *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>s are different is also clear from the fact that sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> can co-occur with preverbal locative phrases, while this does not apply to preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>. Note that for Mandarin, it is widely assumed that the progressive marker *zài* has developed from a locative preposition (Shi 2006:15). So the default reading of a sentence with a preverbal

locative phrase without any aspectual particles is progressive. The same is true for Chángshā, explaining why the action in (62a) with the locative phrase *tsai*<sup>21</sup> *tçia*<sup>33</sup> *li* 'at home' is interpreted as ongoing.

- (62) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup> tçia<sup>33</sup> li k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup> si<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG LOC home in watch TV  
           'He is watching TV at home.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup> tçia<sup>33</sup> li kan<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup> si<sup>41</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup> ko<sup>24</sup>.  
           3SG LOC home in watch TA TV TSAIKO  
           'He is watching TV at home.'
- c. \*t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup> {tsai<sup>21</sup> ko<sup>24</sup>} tçia<sup>33</sup> li {tsai<sup>21</sup> ko<sup>24</sup>}  
           3SG LOC TSAIKO home in TSAIKO  
           kan<sup>45</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup> si<sup>41</sup>.  
           watch TV

The locative phrase *tsai*<sup>21</sup> *tçia*<sup>33</sup> *li* 'at home' is used in (62a) not only to provide spatial information for the event but also to indicate that the action is ongoing. Sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup> *ko*<sup>24</sup> is compatible with such locative, as is clear from (62b). There is not much difference in interpretation between (62a) and (62b), except for the fact that in (62b), there is more emphasis on the state of the ongoingness of the action. By contrast, preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup> *ko*<sup>24</sup> (62c) cannot co-occur with a preverbal locative phrase *tsai*<sup>21</sup> *tçia*<sup>33</sup> *li* 'at home'. This might be because the preverbal locative phrase '*tsai*<sup>21</sup> *tçia*<sup>33</sup> *li* 'at home' and preverbal progressive marker *tsai*<sup>21</sup> *ko*<sup>24</sup> would occupy the same position. It is also possible that they are incompatible because they both express the same notion: the progressive. If the latter is the right reason, sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup> *ko*<sup>24</sup> should perhaps not be treated as a progressive marker.

Thirdly, as I pointed out above, the preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup> *ko*<sup>24</sup> can present an action as ongoing on its own, while this is not the case for sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup> *ko*<sup>24</sup>. This alone can be seen as an important fact if one wants to determine the status of sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup> *ko*<sup>24</sup>. See (63).



of these examples is that sentences with *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> do not always produce a progressive reading and that, as a consequence, it may not be correct to take it as a progressive marker and as the same as preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>.

The above discussion shows that *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is not a mood particle, nor can it be treated as a progressive marker. There are not only distributional but also interpretational differences between sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> and preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>. Having established this, I put forth the hypothesis that the reading of ongoingness of the sentence modified by sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> comes from *ta*<sup>21</sup>. Then the immediate question is: What is *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> used for? Put differently, what is the relation between the use of *ta*<sup>21</sup> and sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>? Before we provide an answer to this question, I will first provide an analysis of the semantic interpretation of sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>. I am going to propose that the reading of sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is relevant to the reading of present tense.

### 2.6.3 Sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>: a reading of present tense

In this section, I propose that *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> contributes temporal location to the sentence. More specifically, sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is used to indicate that the situation time of a sentence overlaps with speech time.

First, the use of *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> with placement verbs can help us to argue for the idea that its main function is to locate the situation in the present tense, as in (66).

- (66) a. tɕ<sup>h</sup>ian<sup>13</sup> san<sup>21</sup> kua<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> fa<sup>21</sup>.  
           wall on hang TA picture  
           'There are some pictures on the wall.'  
       b. tɕ<sup>h</sup>ian<sup>13</sup> san<sup>21</sup> kua<sup>54</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> fa<sup>21</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup>.  
           wall on hang TA picture TSAIKO  
           'Some pictures are on the wall (as you can see now).'

Sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is optional in (66), and *ta*<sup>21</sup> can therefore be interpreted as a perfective marker indicating that the action has been completed, the reading of the duration of the result state from the action is derived from the

action: after you hang a picture on the wall, it is hanging there (see the beginning of 2.5 above). In (66b), *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is used, and the speaker places more emphasis on the present state of the picture on the wall. We can imagine a situation to distinguish between the two sentences: for example, Tsansan asks Lisi to hang a picture on the wall, and if there is already a picture on the wall, Lisi would say (66b) rather than (66a). In this way, Lisi is saying that there is a picture on the wall, “as we speak”. So in fact by uttering this sentence, Lisi intends to relate the event time, the time when the picture is on the wall to the speech time. (66a), on the other hand, does not have such an actuality implication.

Observe that sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is not compatible with temporal phrases indicating a future event and a past event.

- (67) a. \*t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> kan<sup>33</sup> ts<sup>h</sup>ai<sup>13</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup>.  
 3SG just now watch TA TV TSAIKO  
 Intended: 'He was watching TV just now.'
- b. \*min<sup>13</sup>tian<sup>33</sup> ko<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>41</sup>si<sup>13</sup>xou<sup>21</sup>, t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>  
 tomorrow this time 3SG watch TA  
 tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup>.  
 TV TSAIKO  
 'At this time tomorrow, he will be watching TV.'

The above shows that sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is used to help locate an event in time, and the sentence modified with sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> can only obtain a present tense reading.

Sybesma (2004, 2007) suggests that Mandarin and Cantonese languages do have tense, but do not express it using verbal suffixes. He observes that Cantonese sentence final particle *lei*<sup>4</sup> is used to express past events, while *ge*<sup>3</sup> takes care of the non-past. He proposes that *lei*<sup>4</sup> and *ge*<sup>3</sup> are possible instantiations of a tense operator in the C-domain of a Cantonese sentence (possibly FinP), which set the value of the head of the TP to plus or minus past ([−/+PAST]). (68) - (69) are from Sybesma (2004).

- (68) a. go<sup>2</sup>-di<sup>1</sup>-syu<sup>1</sup>, aa<sup>3</sup>-ji<sup>6</sup>-suk<sup>1</sup> wui<sup>5</sup> luk<sup>6</sup> zuk<sup>6</sup> gei<sup>3</sup> faan<sup>3</sup>  
 that CL book, 2SG uncle will continue send- back  
 lei<sup>4</sup> (ge<sup>3</sup>).

come GE

Without GE: 'as to those books, Second Uncle will continue to send them to us.'

With GE: 'as to those books, Second Uncle will continue to send them to us-for sure, don't worry about it.'

- b. keoi<sup>5</sup> sik<sup>1</sup> Dak<sup>1</sup>man<sup>2</sup> (ge<sup>3</sup>)

3SG know German GE

Without GE: 'S/he knows German.'

With GE: 'don't worry, s/he knows German.'

- (69) keoi<sup>5</sup> hai<sup>2</sup> Rotterdam zyu<sup>6</sup> (lei<sup>4</sup>)

3SG at Rotterdam live LEI

Without *lei*<sup>4</sup>: 'S/he lives in Rotterdam.'

With *lei*<sup>4</sup>: 'S/he used to live in Rotterdam.'

In (68), sentence final *ge*<sup>3</sup> is optional, but without *ge*, the sentences present a general statement, a general truth, while with *ge*<sup>3</sup> the statement is relevant to the current moment. In (69), we see very clearly the effect of adding *lei*<sup>4</sup>: without it, the sentence reads as a present tense, with it, it has become a statement about a situation in the past. According to Sybesma (2004), the sentence final elements *ge*<sup>3</sup> and *lei*<sup>4</sup> occupy C-head positions, from which they influence the setting of the head of TP. I assume that the same happens in Chángshā. Specifically, I point out that the sentence final *tsai*<sup>24</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> is a tense element in the C-domain and functions like *ge*<sup>3</sup> in Cantonese: binding a variable in T, setting the value of T as present.

To further support the analysis of sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> as a present tense operator, I provide an analysis for another sentence final particle in Chángshā: *k*<sup>h</sup>*ə*<sup>45</sup>*lai*<sup>13</sup>.

*k*<sup>h</sup>*ə*<sup>45</sup>*lai*<sup>13</sup> can only appear at the end of a sentence. It is traditionally treated as an experiential aspect (Zhōu 1998) or anterior (Perfect) aspect marker (Wǔ 1999). Zhōu claims, "*k*<sup>h</sup>*ə*<sup>45</sup>*lai*<sup>13</sup>" signifies a temporal gap between the time of

the action/activity and the time of utterance or time specified in the context.”  
(70a) - (70b) are from Zhou (1998:11).

- (70) a. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ko<sup>24</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup>lai<sup>13</sup>.  
           read this CL book KHELAI  
           'Tsansan was reading this book.'  
       b. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> kə<sup>45</sup> ɕio<sup>24</sup>xiao<sup>45</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup>lai<sup>13</sup>.  
           go school KHELAI  
           'Tsansan went to school.'

(70) can be used to answer a question like: "Where was Tsansan?" By saying (70), the speaker says that Tsansan was reading the book or had gone to school, implying that why the speaker did not see him.

Different from Zhōu, Wū (1999) treats *k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup>lai<sup>13</sup>* as a Perfect aspect marker, indicating that the action has finished in the past but is still connected to the utterance time. Wǔ (1999) uses Anterior to replace Perfect, and defines the anterior aspect marker as an element that "... signals that the situation has occurred prior to the reference time and is relevant to the situation at another time" (Wū 1999:8). (71) is from Wū (1999:79).

- (71) a. xao<sup>41</sup> tsiəu<sup>41</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup>tau<sup>45</sup> li<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>, li<sup>41</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup> la<sup>41</sup>li  
           long time NEG see 2SG Mod 2SG go where  
           k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup>lai<sup>33</sup> la?  
           KHELAI QM  
           'I have not seen you for a long time. Where did you go?'  
       b. ŋo<sup>41</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup> Shan<sup>21</sup>hai<sup>41</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup>lai<sup>13</sup>.  
           1SG go Shanghai KHELAI  
           'I went to Shanghai.'

I suggest that *k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup>lai<sup>13</sup>* should not be treated as anterior or experiential aspect, but rather as a tense operator. Its main function is to place the situation time of the sentence before the speech time as a [+PAST] counterpart to *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>, comparable to Cantonese *lei*<sup>4</sup>.

My first argument comes from the observation that  $k^h\partial^{45}lai^{13}$  has nothing to do with the present situation; it just indicates a past event, as is clear from the interpretation in (72a). To better see that  $k^h\partial^{45}lai^{13}$  is used to locate the sentence in time, we compare  $k^h\partial^{45}lai^{13}$  with  $ta^{21}$  in its perfective use (72a) - (72b).

- (72) a.  $tsan^{33}san^{33} lai^{13} k^h\partial^{45}lai^{13}$ .  
           come KHELAI  
           'Tsansan was here (now he has left).'
- b.  $tsan^{33}san^{33} lai^{13} ta^{21}$ .  
           come TA  
           'Tsansan has come (he is here).'

In (72a),  $k^h\partial^{45}lai^{13}$  is used, and the sentence means that Tsansan was here, but he has now left; on the other hand, (72b), with  $ta^{21}$ , means that Tsansan has come and he is still here now. The comparison shows that  $k^h\partial^{45}lai^{13}$  has nothing to do with the present tense. That  $k^h\partial^{45}lai^{13}$  is relevant to the past event reading also can be seen in (73).

- (73) a.  $tsan^{33}san^{33} pin^{21} k^h\partial^{45}lai^{33}$ .  
           ill KHELAI  
           'Tsansan was ill.'
- b.  $tsan^{33}san^{33} pin^{21} ka^{41} ta^{21}$ .  
           ill KA TA  
           'Tsansan has fallen ill.'

(73a) means that Tsansan was ill, but has now recovered, while (73b), with  $ta^{21}$  (and  $ka^{41}$  to which we turn in the next chapter), gets a change of a state reading: Tsansan has fallen ill.

My second argument is relevant to the observation that  $k\partial^{41}lai^{13}$  focuses on the location of an action on the temporal axis; it does not say much about the presentation of the temporal structure of an event.

- (74) a. *la*<sup>45</sup> *poŋ*<sup>13</sup> *tɕiao*<sup>41</sup>*tsi* *la*<sup>41</sup>*ko*<sup>54</sup> *tɕia*<sup>24</sup> *k<sup>h</sup>ə*<sup>45</sup>*lai*<sup>13</sup>?
- that CL dumpling who eat KHELAI
- 'Who ate from the plate of dumplings?'
- b. *la*<sup>45</sup> *poŋ*<sup>13</sup> *tɕiao*<sup>41</sup>*tsi* *la*<sup>41</sup>*ko*<sup>54</sup> *tɕia*<sup>24</sup> *ka*<sup>41</sup> *ta*<sup>21</sup>?
- that CL dumpling who eat KA TA
- 'Who has eaten that plate of dumplings?'

(74a) means that the speaker asks who ate dumplings in the dish. When the sentence is uttered, there are still some dumplings left. In using (74b), there are no dumplings left. The comparison in (74) shows that *k<sup>h</sup>ə*<sup>45</sup>*lai*<sup>13</sup> focuses on the action itself: it indicates that there was a certain action, in this case eating dumplings, in the past. *ta*<sup>21</sup>, on the other hand, focuses more on the presentation of the event as a whole, including the endpoint. (75) also illustrates this.

- (75) a. *la*<sup>45</sup> *tɕiən*<sup>21</sup> *i*<sup>33</sup>*fu* *ŋo*<sup>41</sup> *ɕi*<sup>41</sup> *k<sup>h</sup>ə*<sup>45</sup>*lai*<sup>33</sup> (*ɕi*<sup>41</sup> *pu*<sup>45</sup> *kan*<sup>33</sup>*tɕin*<sup>41</sup>).
- that CL clothes 1SG washKHELAI wash NEG clean
- 'I washed (was washing) that piece of clothing (but failed to wash it clean).'
- b. *la*<sup>45</sup> *tɕiən*<sup>21</sup> *i*<sup>33</sup>*fu* *ɕi*<sup>41</sup> *ka*<sup>41</sup> *ta*<sup>21</sup> (\**ɕi*<sup>41</sup> *pu*<sup>45</sup> *kan*<sup>33</sup>*tɕin*<sup>41</sup>).
- that CL clothes wash KA TA, washNEG clean
- '(I) have washed that piece of clothing (\*but failed to wash it clean).'

In (75a), *k<sup>h</sup>ə*<sup>45</sup>*lai*<sup>13</sup> is used; the speaker means that he did some washing, but no claim is made to the effect that it was successfully concluded; that is why the follow-up sentence denying successful completion can be added. All he is saying is that there was an event of washing and it is located before the time of speech. In (75b), *ta*<sup>21</sup> is used (with *ka*<sup>41</sup>), and the clause stating that I failed to wash the clothes clean is not allowed here. This is due to the fact that *ka*<sup>41</sup> and *ta*<sup>21</sup> express that the action has been completed and completing an act of washing implies that whatever one was washing will have become clean, while *k<sup>h</sup>ə*<sup>45</sup>*lai*<sup>13</sup> only indicates that an action of washing took place at some point before the utterance time. In (75a), the speaker means that he went through the motions of washing, but because there is no question of him completing the act of washing, there is no implication of having washed the clothes clean.

Finally, observe that *k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup>lai<sup>13</sup>* is often used to indicate that someone did something in the recent past time.

- (76) A: la<sup>41</sup>ko<sup>45</sup>tso<sup>21</sup> ηo<sup>41</sup>ti<sup>21</sup> i<sup>41</sup>tsi k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup>lai<sup>13</sup>?  
 who sit my chair KHELAI  
 'Who sat on my chair?'  
 B: ηo<sup>41</sup> tso<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup>lai<sup>13</sup>.  
 1SG sit KHELAI  
 'I did.'
- (77) A: li<sup>41</sup> o<sup>24</sup>kai<sup>41</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu la<sup>41</sup>?  
 2SG why NEG wash clothes QM  
 'Why did not you wash the clothes?'  
 B: pu<sup>24</sup>tə kən<sup>45</sup> lə, ηo<sup>41</sup> shan<sup>21</sup> kai<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup> lai<sup>13</sup>.  
 NEG free SFP, 1SG go street KHELAI  
 'I was not free, I was out shopping.'
- (78) A: a<sup>13</sup> tsi ku<sup>24</sup> tə ko<sup>24</sup>yan<sup>21</sup> shan<sup>33</sup>xin<sup>33</sup>, li<sup>41</sup> mau<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>41</sup>  
 child cry SUB so sad 2SG NEG hit  
 t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup>lai<sup>13</sup> pa?  
 him KHELAI QM  
 'The child is crying so hard, is it because you hit him?'  
 B: ηo<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>41</sup> t<sup>h</sup>a k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup> lai<sup>13</sup>? pu<sup>24</sup> ko<sup>41</sup> lən<sup>13</sup> lo<sup>33</sup>.  
 1SG hit 3SG KHELAI NEG possible MP  
 'I hit him? Impossible.'

In (76) - (78), *kə<sup>45</sup>lai<sup>13</sup>* is used to express a past tense, to report about a past event. For example, in (76A), the speaker may find that the chair had been moved a little, or there was some signs showing that someone just sat on his chair. By asking the question, he was in fact verifying whether someone sat on his chair, that is, the sentence focuses on the taking place of a past event (there is obviously no-one sitting in the chair now).

The above facts indicate that *kə<sup>45</sup>lai<sup>13</sup>* is better treated as a tense element indicating that the situation is set before the speech time. I assume without

further discussion, but with reference to what we find in Cantonese, that it is located in the CP-domain.

In sum, I argue that sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  and  $kə^{45}lai^{13}$  are two tense elements in the same way that the Cantonese elements introduced above are tense elements: they occupy a position in the CP domain, from which they determine or "set" the value of the head of TP. The former indicates present tense and the latter indicates past tense. The temporal feature of the two particles can be shown in (79).

- (79) a.  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  [present]  
 b.  $kə^{45}lai^{13}$  [past]

Now that we have seen that the interpretation of  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  is relevant to present tense, we turn to the question raised in section 2.6.1: What is the relation between sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  and  $ta^{21}$  when  $ta^{21}$  is used as a progressive marker? In what follows I provide a detailed analysis to show that the use of  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  functions as one of the mechanisms to license the use of  $ta^{21}$  as a progressive marker.

#### 2.6.4 Summary

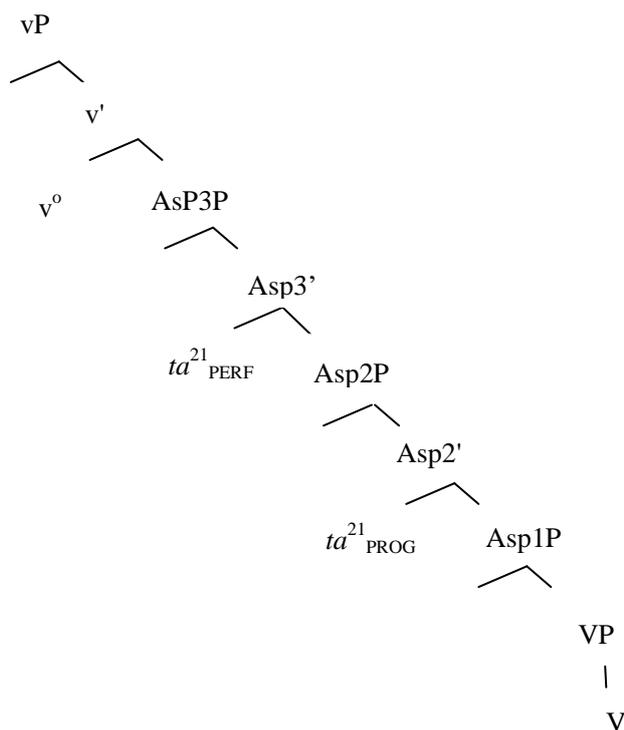
In this section, I provided an analysis to explain the function of sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ . I argued for the idea that the sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  is a tense element indicating that the situation is set before the speech time. It occupies a position in the CP domain, from which it determines or "sets" the value of the head of TP.

#### 2.7 Distinguishing two $ta^{21}$ s

In the above section, I point out that sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  is not a progressive marker, but a present tense operator. In this section, I will point out that the interpretation of sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  can help me distinguish  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  from  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ . I assume that  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  is located in Asp3<sup>o</sup>, and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is

located in  $Asp2^0$ . The main reason to justify the different positions of these two particles is that, as was introduced above, these two particles have different meanings:  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$  is a perfective marker, indicating that an event has been terminated or completed and  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  is a progressive marker, indicating that an event is ongoing. The difference in meaning may be seen as an indication of a difference in position. This corresponds to the general insight that perfective aspect is located higher than progressive aspect, which is what Tsai (2008) applies to Mandarin as well (even if the concrete positions he assigns them to differ from mine). The structural positions I assume for  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$  and  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  in the tree introduced in chapter 1 are indicated in (80).

(80)



### 2.7.1 Event argument licensing, *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> and *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub>

What we have seen in the previous sections is that in certain sentences, the element *ta*<sup>21</sup> is a marker of the progressive, as long as it is accompanied by other material such as sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>, certain adverbs or negation, and a marker of the perfective without the condition that it be accompanied by such material in these contexts. I would like to propose that this can be explained in terms of tense anchoring, or, really, event argument licensing, developed by Tsai (2008).

### 2.7.2 Tense anchoring in Mandarin Chinese

Tsai's point of departure is constituted first by sentences like (81a) - (81b) (from Tsai 2008:677) which sound incomplete to native speakers even though they seem complete: the argument structure of the sentence is complete and there is an aspect marker, but it is somehow felt to be not completely right. That is why Tsai says they are "felt to be incomplete".

- (81) a. % Akiū n á le shū.  
           take PERF book  
           'Akiu took a book(s).'  
       b. % Akiu pǎo zhe.  
           run IMP  
           'Akiu was running.'

His second point of departure is the theoretical point that every event variable must be bound by a tense operator or another type of operator, like a deontic or a negative operator. Tsai claims that the sentences in (81a) - (81b) are incomplete as a result of the failure to get the event variable bound. To get the event variable brought out, several strategies are available. The simplest is using tense. The event variable can be seen as linked to what is called "semantic tense" and the event variable is brought out as soon as the semantic tense has been anchored to syntactic tense. Or, in Tsai's (2008:681) own words: "to get a semantic tense anchored to a morpho-syntactic structure, is to get the event variable spelled out. [This can be done] by various types of strategies. English has tense morphology which does the job" but Chinese tense is

"weak" and, as a result, "cannot bring out the event variable by itself." Consequently, additional measures need to be taken so as to make sure that the event variable can be brought out. As we will see in a moment, the additional measures can be divided into two groups, one group of measures which in different ways support the T-node in the sentence and another group which brings out the event variable independently of tense.

For example, in the syntactic tree that Tsai adopts (2008:683), there are two different aspectual projections for outer aspect markers: one is above vP, the other is lower than vP. According to Tsai, aspectual elements occupying the head of the upper projection can directly hook up with T and in that way "tense anchor" the event, but the elements in the lower one cannot do so. This raising of Asp to T is a way of making the T strong enough to bind the event variable, just like in English.

For Mandarin, Tsai takes preverbal progressive marker *zài* and experiential aspect suffix *guo* to occupy the higher outer aspect, while *le* and *zhe* occupy the aspect position below vP. As a result, according to Tsai, *zài* and *guo* can move up to T to strengthen T so as to enable it to license the event variable, while *le* and *zhe* are too low to do the same. This is why (81a) - (81b) with *le* and *zhe* respectively are ungrammatical or "incomplete", while (82a) with *guo* and (82b) with *zài* are fine.

- (82) a. Akiu n á guo shū.  
           take EXP book  
           'Akiu took a book(s).'
- b. Akiu z ài kū.  
           PROG cry  
           'Akiu was crying.'

Still according to Tsai, if tense cannot do it, other operators bring out or bind the event variable ("Chinese employs all sorts of eventuality construals"; Tsai 2008:681). These have no direct relation to T (although, as we will see shortly, one of these, will be related to T after all, at least according to us), so that is why Tsai talks about a more general "Generalized Anchoring Principle". Examples of these eventuality construals are: sentence final *le*, negation, and event modification. These ways of licensing an event variable are illustrated as follows.

Sentence final *le* in Mandarin is an inchoative/evidential operator according to Tsai (2008:685). In a sentence modified by sentence final *le*, the event variable is brought out by being bound by this operator. That is why the incompleteness of the sentence is cancelled. (83) is from Tsai (2008:677 (6a), (6e)).

- (83) a. % Akiū n á le shū .  
           take PERF book  
           'Akiu took a book(s)'  
       b. Akiū n á le shū le.  
           take PERF book SFP  
           'Akiu took a book(s).'

We can also look at this sentence from the perspective of tense binding introduced above, according to which an element like *le* in sentence final position can bind the tense variable in T (just like Cantonese *ge*<sup>3</sup> and *lei*<sup>4</sup>). If we look at *le* this way, sentence final *le* is actually more directly related to Tense than Tsai assumes.

Next, according to Tsai (2008), the negative operator is like deontic operators that can help bring out an event variable. This can be seen in (84) (Tsai 2008:677 (6a), (6d)).

- (84) a. % Akiū n á shū.  
           take book  
           'Akiu take a book(s).'  
       b. Akiū yīnggāi/ m á n á shū.  
           should not take book  
           'Akiu should have/has not taken a book(s).'

In (84b), the negative operator *m á* 'not' or *yīnggāi* 'should' is used, and the incompleteness is cancelled. Note that in terms of Tsai (2008) the deontic operator in (84b) belongs to the same class as the negative operator.

Finally, the explanation of the function of event quantification is also relevant to event variable licensing. An event that is quantified must be one whose event variable is spelt out. For instance, when a sentence is quantified

by a quantificational adverb, the event argument must be syntactically accessible. See (85) (Tsai 2008:676 (1a)).

- (85) Akiu yīzhí pǎo zhe.  
           continuously run IMP  
       'Akiu is running continuously.'

According to Tsai (2008), the adverb *yīzhí* 'continuously' modifies the event argument. By way of the modification, the event argument is made visible in syntax. As Tsai phrases it: "When an event argument is modified or predicated upon, it has to be visible in syntax" (Tsai 2008:682).

Tsai does not mention the case of manner adverbs, but as it turns out, they work in the same way, so we may as well add it to the inventory since manner adverbs can also function as licensors of the event argument, as is clear from the following Mandarin example:

- (86) a. %Zhāngsān chàng zhe gē.  
           sing DUR song  
       b. Zhāngsān dàshēngde chàng zhe gē.  
           loudly sing DUR song  
       'Zhangsan is singing loudly.'

In (86a), the sentence sounds incomplete; however, in (86b) where a manner adverb *dàshēngde* 'loudly' is added, the incompleteness is gone. Obviously, manner adverbs can help spell out the event variable.

To sum up, I introduced Tsai (2008), where it is argued that the event variable in a predicate must be bound ("brought out" or "spelt out") syntactically. The process of syntactic tense anchoring is one of the ways that languages use to do this. In languages with tense morphology, this process is straightforward. Tense in Mandarin, however, is "weak" as a result of which the situation is less straightforward. In Mandarin, an event argument is either brought out through syntactic derivation by the raising of Asp to T so as to make T strong enough to license the event argument, or it is made visible by

other strategies, which include event modification, event quantification and different types of operators

Importantly, for Tsai, not all aspectual elements can move up to T to make it strong so as to enable it to bind the event variable. This is one of the ideas in Tsai (2008) that I will use to explain the multifunctionality of  $ta^{21}$  in Chángshā.

### 2.7.3 Back to Chángshā

For the analysis of  $ta^{21}$ , we will follow the spirit of Tsai's proposal and adopt most but not all the details. So we adopt the basic idea that the event argument of an event must be brought out and that this can be done in different ways: by strengthening T or by using different means. The tree I have adopted is not exactly the same as the one in Tsai (2008), but, like Tsai, I assume, as we have argued, that aspectual markers expressing different semantics occupy different positions in the structure. In particular, in the structure I adopt,  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  occupies a position which is higher than  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ .

In Chapter 1 we saw that Sybesma (2017) proposes a structure that involves three inner aspect positions. According to Sybesma, the main function of the middle one of these, Asp2P, is to make the activity denoted by the verb which leads up to the endpoint inaccessible for further syntactic operations. I adopt the idea that there is an aspectual position between the RealizationP (Asp1P) and TelicityP (Asp3P), but I will modify its function. I assume that the function of Asp2 depends on what occupies this position. It can be occupied by elements that perform the function Sybesma describes (blocking the verbal activity to undergo any further syntactic operations), but it can also be occupied by elements that indicate the opposite, namely that the action is in progress. So I assume that  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is located in this position.

I locate  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  in Asp2P for the following reasons (but I will come back to the location of  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  in chapter 3, where the function of Asp2 will be further developed). First, as I have shown, in Chángshā there are two aspect markers that can be used to indicate the ongoingness of an action: preverbal  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  and postverbal  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ . These two particles can co-occur. The  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  is like the progressive marker  $zài$  in Mandarin. It is widely assumed for Mandarin that both the progressive and the experiential aspect marker are

located in outer aspect position (Tsai 2008, Hú 2005 among many others). In view of its similarity in function, it makes sense to assume that  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  is located in the outer aspect position as well. Assuming that, like in Mandarin, V ends up in little v and observing that  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  follows the verb,  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  must be in a position lower than little v. Secondly, the data so far shows that  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  is different from  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$  in the sense that  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$  can be used on its own (in the sense that no other material needs to accompany it), while this is not the case for  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  and in Tsai's framework this would mean that they cannot occupy the same position. More specifically, only one of them is high enough to make a connection with and in so doing strengthen T to enable it to license the event argument: this one is  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$ . This means that  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  must be lower, which in the tree structure we adopted is Asp2P.

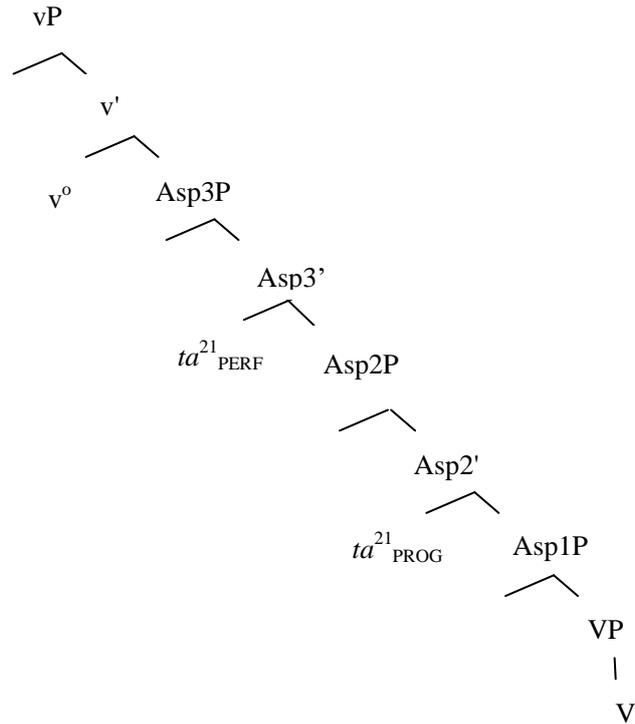
For the sake of completeness, I recall that, following Sybesma's (2017) ideas on the position of perfective *le*, that  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$  is, like *le*, located in inner aspect position but interpreted in outer aspect position. The main reason is the same as why Sybesma argues *le* to be below vP, namely the order of the different elements in BA-sentences. Just like Mandarin *le*, Chángshā  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$  always follows the verbal complex and if BA is in  $v^0$  then  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$  cannot be in outer aspect (see for more details Chapter 1), despite the fact that that is the position where it is interpreted (see Chapter 1 and immediately below).

- (87) a.  $tsan^{33}san^{33}$   $ba^{41}$   $sou^{41}juan^{45}$   $ku^{24}de$   $si^{24}$   $ka^{41}$   $ta^{21}$ .  
           BA handkerchief cry SUB wet KA PERF  
           'Tsansan cried such that the handkerchief got wet.'
- b.  $tsan^{33}san^{33}$   $ba^{41}$   $sou^{41}juan^{45}$   $ku^{24}$   $si^{24}$   $ka^{41}$   $ta^{21}$ .  
           BA handkerchief cry wet KA PERF  
           'Tsansan cried such that the handkerchief got wet.'

Furthermore, what is positive is that the outcome of these language internal reasoning corresponds to what is assumed by others for languages more generally, namely that PERF is higher than PROG. Harwood (2015), for instance, claims that perfect aspect should be contained, along with tense and modality, in a phrase which is higher than progressive aspect, which is lower, along with voice and the lexical verb (Harwood 2015:559).

The position of  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is presented in (88).

(88)



I have already said a few times that both *le* and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ , despite the fact that they are located in inner aspect, are interpreted in outer aspect. This was discussed in more detail in Chapter 1. It is important to emphasize that there is a difference between Mandarin and the Xiāng dialects in two, I think, correlating respects. First, whereas in the Xiāng dialect Chángshā  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  is able to strengthen T such that the latter is enabled to license the event argument, Mandarin *le* is not. The second difference is that the phenomenon that we see in the Xiāng dialect Chénxī, that both the outer and the inner aspect position are filled (see (89), repeated from Chapter 1), is not found in any Mandarin dialect. I suggest that these two differences are related: in the dialect group where we see that the relationship can be marked overtly (both positions are overtly filled; or, phrased differently: the outer aspect position is more active), the perfective marker can strengthen T so that it can bind the event argument, while in the dialect group where the relation is always covert (less active), the

perfective marker is unable to do so. Even though in Chángshā itself, the two positions are not simultaneously filled, it does belong to the dialect group in which this is in principle possible.

- (89) a.  $t^h a^{33}$   $\tau au^{24}$   $\epsilon i^{41}$   $i^{33} fu$ .  
 3SG PERF wash clothes  
 'He has washed his clothes.'
- b.  $t^h a^{33}$   $\epsilon i^{41}$   $lia^{33}$   $i^{33} fu$ .  
 3SG wash PERF clothes  
 'He has washed his clothes.'
- c.  $t^h a^{33}$   $\tau au^{24}$   $\epsilon i^{21}$   $lia^{33}$   $i^{33} fu$ .  
 3SG PERF wash PERF clothes  
 'He has washed his clothes.'

On the basis of this, we conclude that in perfective sentences in Chángshā, the outer aspect position is active to the extent that it can help T to license the event argument (something which we don't see in Mandarin).

Chángshā  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  cannot strengthen T, presumably, following Tsai's (2008) reasoning, because it is too low in the structure. Consequently, it cannot help T to license the event argument, as a consequence of which the sentence needs to be helped in other ways. That is why  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is always accompanied by other material. It is the other material that does what  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is unable to do itself. We will look at these cases again, now from the perspective of Tsai's anchoring approach

One of the elements that accompanies  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is  $tsai^{21} ko^{24}$ . So, how does  $tsai^{21} ko^{24}$  "save" such ungrammatical sentences with  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  as in (90)?

- (90)  $t^h a^{33}$   $k^h an^{45}$   $ta^{21}$   $ti \epsilon n^{45} si^{41}$   $*(tsai^{21} ko^{24})$ .  
 3SG watch IMP TV TSAIKO  
 'He is watching TV.'

We have seen earlier on that sentence final  $tsai^{21} ko^{24}$  is a tense operator setting the value of T to present: we saw that it functions like sentence final *le* in Mandarin and *lei<sup>f</sup>* and *ge<sup>3</sup>* in Cantonese. We take it that by overtly setting the value of T,  $tsai^{21} ko^{24}$  strengthens T in Tsai's sense to enable it to bring out the

event argument. The fact that *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub> is too low to move up to T itself is no longer a problem: the sentence is saved by sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>. This way, the sentence with the progressive interpretation due to progressive marker *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub> is grammatical.

Other cases are even more straightforwardly analyzable in the spirit of Tsai (2008). One of these cases was event modification. As I have pointed out, a sentence with *ta*<sup>21</sup> modified by a manner adverb can have two readings. It can indicate that the action has been completed/terminated, but it can also indicate that the action is ongoing. Note again, that without the presence of the manner adverb, the progressive reading is not available, though this is not a problem for the perfective reading. Relevant examples are given in (91).

- (91) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>au<sup>33</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> mən<sup>13</sup>.  
           3SG knock PERF door  
           'He knocked at the door.' (Only interpretation possible)
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tɕ<sup>h</sup>in tɕ<sup>h</sup>in ti k<sup>h</sup>au<sup>33</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> mən<sup>13</sup>.  
           3SG lightly knock PERF/IMP door  
           'He knocked at the door lightly.'  
           'He is knocking at the door lightly.'

Under the proposed anchoring approach, the ambiguity in (90) can be accounted for. *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> can enable T to license the event argument; it can do so itself, it needs no other elements to help. *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub> on the other hand cannot strengthen T and needs help which it gets from the manner adverb – and that is why the adverb is not optional. The event modifier behaves as Tsai says it does: it brings out the event argument. Note that in Tsai (2008) event modification can also be done with a temporal modifier (like 'this morning'), however this is also the case for Chángshā. In Chángshā, a sentence with *ta*<sup>21</sup> and a temporal modifier can only have a perfective reading.

- (92) tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> jin<sup>33</sup> t<sup>h</sup>ian<sup>33</sup> shan<sup>21</sup> u<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tian<sup>45</sup> s<sup>h</sup>i<sup>41</sup>.  
           today morning watch TA TV  
           'Tsansan watched TV this morning.'  
           \*'Tsansan was watching TV this morning.'

In (92), the temporal phrase  $j\dot{i}n^{33}t^h\dot{i}a\dot{n}^{33}sh\dot{a}n^{21}u^{21}$  'today' is used;  $ta^{21}$  in the sentence can only have perfective reading. This shows that temporal phrases in Chángshā cannot help license an event argument as they cannot so in Mandarin.

#### 2.7.4 $ta^{21}$ with the progressive aspect

In section 2.2.2.3, I showed that  $ta^{21}$  can always appear with the preverbal progressive marker  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  with the sentence having a progressive reading. In traditional analyses, in these cases,  $ta^{21}$  is just treated as a progressive marker without further explanation. However as we have seen, it is not clear why  $ta^{21}$  should be a progressive marker here, since without the combination it also can be a perfective marker. However, now we see that the fact that  $ta^{21}$  can be combined with the progressive aspect is also related to the licensing of an event argument.

- (93)  $t^h a^{33}$   $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$   $k^h a\dot{n}^{45}$  ( $ta^{21}$ )  $t\dot{i}a\dot{n}^{45}si^{41}$ .  
 3SG PROG watch TA TV  
 'He is watching TV.'

In (93) the sentence appears in the progressive, marked by the preverbal  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ , and  $ta^{21}$  can be but not necessarily has to be combined with it. In the traditional analysis, it is not clear why these two particles can be combined. In fact, no explanation has ever been given. Under the present approach, this can be nicely accounted for because we take this instance of  $ta^{21}$  as a progressive marker, which in this case get assistance from the other progressive marker. In Tsai (2008), the progressive marker  $z\ddot{a}$  is located in outer aspect position, hence it can strengthen T directly, helping anchor the sentence to tense (Tsai 2008). I assume that the same is true in Chángshā, where the preverbal  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ , like  $z\ddot{a}$  in Mandarin, also occupies a position from which it can raise to T or in any case strengthen it directly.

### 2.7.5 $ta^{21}$ with negation and other licensors

We have seen that  $ta^{21}$  in combination with a negation can only be  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ , as in (3), repeated here as (94).

- (94) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> au<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG NEG watch PROG TV  
           'He is not watching TV.'  
       b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG watch PERF TV  
           'He watched TV.'

$ta^{21}$  in (94a) can only have a progressive reading, while in (94b), without the negative marker, the progressive reading is not available. As we noted, if  $ta^{21}$  is exclusively treated as a perfective marker, the interpretation of (94a) is not easy to explain: it is not clear why in a negative construction the perfective marker must produce the progressive meaning (and in the greater context of Chinese linguistics it is not clear why the perfective marker would still be there at all, since it is generally in complementary distribution with the negative marker). Now that we have distinguished  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  from  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ , the observation in (94a) can be nicely accounted for. That is, in (94a),  $ta^{21}$  is used as a progressive marker. The negative marker  $mau^{21}$  'not have' can license the event argument (Tsai 2008:681). Other mechanisms (like event coordination, event subordination counterfactuals) mentioned by Tsai also work with the use of  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  in Chángshā.

- (95) a. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> i<sup>13</sup>pian<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>shi<sup>41</sup>,  
                                   on the one hand watch PROG TV  
           i<sup>13</sup>pian<sup>33</sup> eiə<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> pao<sup>45</sup>kao<sup>45</sup>.  
           on the other hand write PROG report  
           'Tsansan is watching TV and writing the report at the same time.'  
       b. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> te<sup>h</sup>1<sup>13</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> ma<sup>41</sup> shan<sup>21</sup>shan<sup>33</sup>.  
                                   ride PROG horse climb mountain  
           'Tsansan is climbing the mountain riding on a horseback.'

- c. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tian<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>, ta<sup>33</sup> ti tɛ<sup>h</sup>i<sup>33</sup>tsi k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup>  
 watch PROG TV 3SG SUB wife read  
 ta<sup>21</sup> pau<sup>45</sup> tsi<sup>41</sup>.  
 PROG newspaper  
 'Tsansan is watching TV, his wife is reading a piece of newspaper.'
- d. xao<sup>21</sup>shen<sup>33</sup> t<sup>h</sup>i<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>!  
 carefully listen PROG  
 'Listen carefully!'

(95a) is a case of event coordination, (95b) of event subordination, (95c) of conjunction and (95d) is an imperative. In all the sentences in (95), *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be interpreted as a progressive marker, just as predicted by Tsai (2008) in combination with our claim that *ta*<sup>21</sup> is a progressive marker positioned too low in the structure to be able to help T to license the event argument.

To sum up, above I first pointed out that it is better to take the two particles approach to explain the multifunction of *ta*<sup>21</sup>. I pointed out that the two particles approach can avoid problems associated with the one particle approach. Then I provided three pieces of evidence to argue that there are two *ta*<sup>21</sup>s: one is a perfective marker, the other a progressive marker. Having argued for the existence of two particles, I further provided an analysis to distinguish the two. I argued that the two particles are different in syntactic position. Though both *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> and *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub> are located in inner aspect, *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub> is lower than *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub>. Since in the course of derivation, *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> can link up to TP, through the process of which the event argument is brought out, while this is impossible for *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub>. As a result, when *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub> is used the sentence always needs other elements to strengthen T so that it can license (“bring out”) the event variable. These elements include event modification, event coordination, event subordination, negation, sentence final elements relevant to tense etc.

## 2.8 Summary of chapter 2

In this chapter, I provide an analysis of the interpretation and distribution of *ta*<sup>21</sup>. I first evaluate a possible analysis which is found in the literature: the single *ta*<sup>21</sup> approach. Theoretically, one could treat *ta*<sup>21</sup> as a perfective marker

with other readings derived from it depending on the linguistic context. Yet I point out that this is not satisfactory. The main reason is that I cannot provide an account for the fact that  $ta^{21}$  can sometimes have two interpretations in the same context.

I then provide a new proposal: there are two particles:  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ , the former is a perfective and the latter is a progressive marker. To support my analysis, I provide three pieces of evidence: i)  $ta^{21}$  can have two interpretations when an event is modified by certain verbal adverbials; ii) in negative constructions,  $ta^{21}$  can only be interpreted as a progressive marker; iii) when sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  (which I argue to be a tense operator) is used,  $ta^{21}$  can indicate the ongoingness of an event in an activity.

I continue to provide an analysis to disambiguate  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  by pointing out that the difference between  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  lies in the fact that  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  is syntactically higher than  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ .  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  is inner aspect but interpreted in outer aspect;  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is also located in inner aspect position, lower than  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  (I adopted Sybesma's 2017 structure that involves three layers in Inner aspect). In my analysis, I follow Tsai (2008), in assuming that i) an event variable needs to be syntactically licensed; ii) syntactic tense anchoring is a way of licensing the event variable; in English, tense being overt, T is strong enough to license the event variable, while in Mandarin, it is too weak to do so. To be an effective licenser, T needs to be supported one way or another.

In the spirit of Tsai's work, I propose that  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  is syntactically higher than  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ , and that it, though not physically in outer aspect itself, is in a relation with outer aspect such that it can strengthen T so that the latter can license the event variable. This explains why  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  can stand alone in the sense that it need not be accompanied by other material. This is different for  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ . I propose that  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is located lower than  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ . Since it is too far away from outer aspect, blocked by the perfective aspect, it cannot strengthen T. Note that even if the head position of the highest AspP in inner aspect is not filled, the position/projection is still there. To salvage the sentence, other elements need to be present to help T to do its licensing job. That explains why  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is always accompanied by other material, unlike  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ .

To strengthen the analysis presented in this chapter that there are two particles in Chángshā, in chapter 4, I analyze the particles *le* and *zhe* in Mandarin and one particle  $tao^{21}$  in Xùpǔ. I point out that  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  particles in Chángshā correspond to *le* and *zhe* in Mandarin and  $tao^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $tao^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  in Xùpǔ. But before that, I provide an analysis of another Chángshā particle,  $ka^{41}$  in chapter 3.



### Chapter 3. V+ka<sup>41</sup>

#### 3.1 Introduction

In chapter 2, I presented an analysis of *ta*<sup>21</sup> in Chángshā. I pointed out that *ta*<sup>21</sup> is multifunctional. It is a perfective marker in some cases, while in other cases it is a progressive marker. The two particles are distinguished in their structural positions.

In this chapter, I turn to another aspectual particle: *ka*<sup>41</sup>. The particle *ka*<sup>41</sup> is interesting in that it often appears in combination with the perfective *ta*<sup>21</sup>, though it can be used alone in some circumstances; in some cases, it even is interchangeable with the perfective *ta*<sup>21</sup>. To illustrate the latter, here are three sentences, from Wǔ (1999:56):

- (1) a. shan<sup>21</sup> u<sup>41</sup>    ηo<sup>41</sup>    mai<sup>41</sup>    ka<sup>41</sup>    xu<sup>33</sup> tɕiu<sup>21</sup>fɛ<sup>13</sup>    k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup>    ta<sup>21</sup>.  
          morning    1SG    buy    KA    book then back go    PERF  
          'I went back home in the morning after I bought a book.'
- b. ηo<sup>41</sup>    lau<sup>21</sup>    ka<sup>41</sup>    xau<sup>41</sup>to<sup>33</sup>    ɕiau<sup>45</sup>fa<sup>21</sup>.  
          1SG    make    KA    many    mistake  
          'I made a lot of foolish mistakes.'
- c. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> mai<sup>41</sup>    ka<sup>41</sup>    san<sup>33</sup>    pən<sup>41</sup>    xy<sup>33</sup>.  
          buy    KA    three    CL    book  
          'Tsansan bought three books.'

We come back to these cases (i.e., sentences in which *ka*<sup>41</sup> operates as an independent perfective marker) only at the very end of this chapter (section 3.8). In the rest of the chapter, we concentrate on *ka*<sup>41</sup> in sentences in which it is not a perfective marker, e.g., in sentences in which it co-occurs with perfective marker *ta*<sup>21</sup>.

We look at this use of *ka*<sup>41</sup> in three different contexts. First, there are cases in which the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup> is non-optional, in that its omission causes either ungrammaticality or a difference in interpretation. For instance in *BA*-sentences, and in sentences with achievements and change-of-state predicates, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory. Without *ka*<sup>41</sup>, the sentences will be ungrammatical (see (2)).

- (2) a. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> si<sup>41</sup> { \*ta<sup>21</sup>/\*ka<sup>41</sup>/ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> }.  
 die PERF KA KA PERF  
 'Tsansan died.'
- b. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu ɕi<sup>41</sup> { \*ta<sup>21</sup>/\*ka<sup>41</sup>/ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> }.  
 BA clothes wash PERF KA KA PERF  
 'Tsansan has washed his clothes (finished).'
- c. xu<sup>21</sup>iə<sup>24</sup>tsi uaj<sup>13</sup> { \*ta<sup>21</sup>/\*ka<sup>41</sup>/ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> }.  
 leaf yellow PERF KA KA PERF  
 'Leaves have turned yellow.'

There are also cases in which ka<sup>41</sup> is optional: whether ka<sup>41</sup> is used (or not) does not affect the grammaticality or interpretation of a sentence; this is illustrated in (3).

- (3) tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> (ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup> san<sup>33</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
 read KA PERF three CL book  
 'Tsansan read three books.'

Finally, there are also cases, such as [V+bare/definite noun object] constructions, in which case with ka<sup>41</sup>, the sentence has only one reading, while without ka<sup>41</sup>, it has two; see (4).

- (4) a. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu .  
 wash PERF clothes  
 'Tsansan washed the clothes (finished).'  
 'Tsansan washed clothes (not finished).'
- b. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu.  
 wash KA PERF clothes  
 'Tsansan washed the clothes (finished).'
- c. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu ta<sup>21</sup>.  
 wash KA clothes PERF  
 'Tsansan washed the clothes (finished).'

These observations are significant for several reasons. First, in the previous literature, ka<sup>41</sup> is treated as a perfective marker (see Cuī 1997, Lǐ 1991 and Wǔ 1991, 1999, 2005). However, this is not right; the data in (2) - (4) show that the use of ka<sup>41</sup> is more complex.

Secondly, ka<sup>41</sup> does not seem to have a counterpart in most other varieties of Chinese; in any case in Mandarin we don't see it; in sentences with achievements, the BA-construction or change-of-state predicates, no such element is needed in Mandarin.

Given the above considerations, I ask two questions in this chapter:

- a) What is the function and what is structural position of ka<sup>41</sup>?
- b) How can we explain the variation between Xiāng and other varieties of Chinese?

As I just said, in previous analyses (Cuī 1997, Lǐ 1991 and Wǔ 1999, among others), ka<sup>41</sup> and ta<sup>21</sup> are both treated as perfective particles. According to these analyses, the two differ only in their semantic interpretations or the different types of predicates they combine with. It is argued that ka<sup>41</sup> only follows verbs that indicate *deletion, disappearance, consumption* etc., while ta<sup>21</sup> does not have such restriction. It can, for instance, follow eventive predicates. ka<sup>41</sup>, these analyses say, always indicates the completion of an action, as opposed to ta<sup>21</sup>, which can also denote termination (as we also saw in chapter 2).

However, if we look closer, we see that the distribution and function of ka<sup>41</sup> are far more complicated than what has previously been assumed. Rather than treating ka<sup>41</sup> as a perfective marker, I will show that ka<sup>41</sup> is an element that doubles an endpoint that is already present in an event. As we will explain, its function is to make the endpoint definitive and as such block the predicate which expresses the activity which leads up to the endpoint from undergoing any further syntactic operations.

The structure of this chapter is as follows. In section 3.2, I introduce the contexts in which ka<sup>41</sup> is used and the interpretation of the sentences affected by the use of ka<sup>41</sup>. I divide the contexts in which ka<sup>41</sup> is used into three types. In type one, ka<sup>41</sup> is obligatory. In type two, ka<sup>41</sup> is optional, but the interpretation of the sentences varies according to whether ka<sup>41</sup> is used or not; in type three, ka<sup>41</sup> is

optional without leading to differences in interpretation. In section 3.3, I introduce two previous analyses of  $ka^{41}$ , one of which argues that  $ka^{41}$  is a perfective marker; while the other argues that  $ka^{41}$  is an Extended Event Boundary marker. In section 3.4, I argue against the previous analyses, pointing out some new observations that the previous analyses cannot explain. In section 3.5, I present a reexamination of the semantic interpretation of  $ka^{41}$ . I point out that  $ka^{41}$  always appears in events where there already is an endpoint (or change of state). In some cases, the endpoint may be non-overt. As we will see, by adding  $ka^{41}$ , what happens is that the endpoint can no longer be lifted or be stripped off, it has become definitive. In section 3.6, I make a new proposal to account for the uses of  $ka^{41}$ . In section 3.7, I show that the proposed analysis can be used to account for the data presented in the beginning of the chapter. In section 3.8, I discuss the data in (1) and 3.9 is a summary of the chapter.

### 3.2 The data

In this section, I am going to provide a description of the syntactic distribution of  $ka^{41}$  and the interpretation of the sentences with  $ka^{41}$ . I start the description with the contexts in which  $ka^{41}$  is obligatory; the omission of  $ka^{41}$  will cause ungrammaticality. These contexts include achievements, the *BA*-construction, and change of state predicates. In these contexts, the endpoint of an event is inherent, but  $ka^{41}$  is still obligatory.

Then I move on to introduce two types of contexts in which  $ka^{41}$  is optional, in one of which the insertion/omission of  $ka^{41}$  will lead to difference in interpretation of the sentences; these include resultative constructions and accomplishments with quantized objects or postverbal durative/frequentative adverbials.

In the presentation of the data,  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  occurs regularly. I use  $ta^{21}$  instead of  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  for convenience in this chapter.

#### 3.2.1 $ka^{41}$ as obligatory

With achievements, in *BA*-sentences and with change-of-state predicates,  $ka^{41}$  is obligatory. In these three types of cases,  $ka^{41}$  must be there. The deletion of

ka<sup>41</sup> will make the sentences ungrammatical. Note that for comparison, I will also point out that in the same cases in Mandarin, no such element is needed.

### 3.2.1.1 ka<sup>41</sup> in achievements

With only a few exceptions, achievement verbs always co-occur with ka<sup>41</sup>. Let us first look at ka<sup>41</sup> in achievements in the perfective. Sentences with an achievement in the perfective expressed by the perfective marker ta<sup>21</sup>, always contain ka<sup>41</sup> as well. This is shown in (5).

- (5) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> mən<sup>21</sup> tsau<sup>41</sup> tɕiu<sup>21</sup> tau<sup>41</sup> {ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>/\*ka<sup>41</sup>/\*ta<sup>21</sup>}.  
           3PL           early   then   arrive   KA PERF  
           'They have arrived long time ago.'
- b. ts<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>33</sup> tsi fan<sup>33</sup> {ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>/\*ka<sup>41</sup>/\*ta<sup>21</sup>}.  
           car           turn over   KA   PERF  
           'The car turned over.'
- c. Tsansan xy<sup>33</sup> {ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>/\*ka<sup>41</sup>/\*ta<sup>21</sup>}.  
           lose   KA PERF  
           'Tsansan lost (the game).'

The verbs tau<sup>41</sup> 'arrive', fan<sup>33</sup> 'turn over' and xy<sup>33</sup> 'lose' are achievement predicates, and the sentences in (5) show that when presenting these events in the perfective, ka<sup>41</sup> is obligatory, the perfective marker ta<sup>21</sup> cannot do it alone.

Only in a few cases of achievements is ka<sup>41</sup> optional. These cases include the verbs lai<sup>13</sup> 'come' and tsou<sup>41</sup> 'leave'. The interpretation of the sentences differs whether or not ka<sup>41</sup> is used.

- (6) a. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> lai<sup>13</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           come   PERF  
           'Tsansan has come (he may be here or may no longer be here).'
- b. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> lai<sup>13</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           come   KA   PERF  
           'Tsansan has come (he is here now).'

- (7) a. *tsan*<sup>33</sup> *san*<sup>33</sup> *lai*<sup>13</sup> *ta*<sup>21</sup>, *iou*<sup>21</sup> *tsou*<sup>41</sup> *ka*<sup>41</sup> *ta*<sup>21</sup>.  
 come PERF again leave KA PERF  
 'Tsansan has come, (but) he has left again.'
- b. \**tsan*<sup>33</sup> *san*<sup>33</sup> *lai*<sup>13</sup> *ka*<sup>41</sup> *ta*<sup>21</sup>, *iou*<sup>21</sup> *tsou*<sup>41</sup> *ka*<sup>41</sup> *ta*<sup>21</sup>.  
 come KA PERF again leave KA PERF

*ka*<sup>41</sup> is absent in (6a) - (7a) and present in (6b) and (7b). As shown in the translation, in both cases we focus on the realization (he has come), but in the sentence with *ka*<sup>41</sup> there is focus on the resulting state: Tsansan has come here and he is here now. The endpoint is definitive. For instance, if only *ta*<sup>21</sup> is used, the sentence can be followed by a clause indicating the consecutive action of leaving, (7a). However, this is not possible if *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used, (7b). What's more, when there is no follow-up clause indicating the consecutive action, the sentence sounds more natural if *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used. As mentioned, of all the achievement verbs, only *lai*<sup>13</sup> 'come' and *tsou*<sup>41</sup> 'leave' can appear in the perfective with *ta*<sup>21</sup> alone. In all other cases, *ka*<sup>41</sup> must be used.

Next we observe that in a sentence in which the achievement verb is embedded under a modal verb, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is also desirable, if not obligatory.

- (8) a. *la*<sup>45</sup> *tsa*<sup>24</sup> *niau*<sup>41</sup> *kan*<sup>45</sup> *ian*<sup>21</sup> *tsi* *xui*<sup>21</sup> *ɕi*<sup>41</sup> *ka*<sup>41</sup>.  
 DEM CL bird from.the.look.of.it will die KA  
 'It seems that that bird is bound to die.'
- b. ?*la*<sup>45</sup> *tsa*<sup>24</sup> *niau*<sup>41</sup> *kan*<sup>45</sup> *ian*<sup>21</sup> *tsi* *xui*<sup>21</sup> *ɕi*<sup>41</sup>.  
 DEM CL bird from.the.look.of.it will die  
 'It seems that that bird will die.'

- (9) a. *li*<sup>41</sup> *tsai*<sup>45</sup> *uan*<sup>13</sup> *tixua*<sup>21</sup> *xui*<sup>21</sup> *xy*<sup>33</sup> *ka*<sup>41</sup>.  
 2SG again play if will lose KA  
 'If you continue to play (cards) more, you are bound to (lose the game).'
- b. ?*li*<sup>41</sup> *tsai*<sup>45</sup> *uan*<sup>13</sup> *tixua*<sup>21</sup> *xui*<sup>21</sup> *xy*<sup>33</sup>.  
 2SG again play if will lose  
 'If you continue to play more, you may lose (the game).'

In (8) - (9), the modal verb *xui*<sup>21</sup> 'will' is used, embedding the achievement predicate, and *ka*<sup>41</sup> is preferred. The sentences indicate that a possible change is sure to take place. Thus, in (8a), with *ka*<sup>41</sup>, the sentence means that the bird is sure to die. Note that without *ka*<sup>41</sup>, the sentence is marginally acceptable, and sounds a bit unnatural, which is marked by the question mark. The sentences without *ka*<sup>41</sup> only indicate a possibility (if they are good at all). For instance, in (9b), the sentence just means that the bird may die. Note that in these cases, since these are not sentences in the perfective, *ta*<sup>21</sup> cannot appear, as shown in (10) - (11).

(10) \* *la*<sup>45</sup>    *tʂa*<sup>24</sup> *niau*<sup>41</sup>    *kan*<sup>45</sup> *ian*<sup>21</sup> *tsi*    *xui*<sup>21</sup>    *ɕi*<sup>41</sup>    *ka*<sup>41</sup> *ta*<sup>21</sup>.  
          DEM    CL    bird    from.the.look.of.it    will    die    KA    PERF

(11) \**li*<sup>41</sup>    *tsai*<sup>45</sup>    *uan*<sup>13</sup>    *tixua*<sup>21</sup>    *xui*<sup>21</sup>    *xy*<sup>33</sup>    *ka*<sup>41</sup>    *ta*<sup>21</sup>.  
          2SG    again    play    if    will    lose    KA    PERF

In short, in achievements, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory. In what follows I show that with change-of-state predicates, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is also obligatory.

### 3.2.1.2 *ka*<sup>41</sup> in stative predicates expressing change-of-state

In Mandarin, a change of state adjective predicate can be used with the perfective marker *le* producing a change of state reading; See (12).

- (12) a. *huā hóng le.*  
          flower red    PERF  
          'The flowers have turned red.'  
       b. *Zhāngsān shòu le.*  
               thin    PERF  
               'Zhangsan has become thin.'

Different from Mandarin, in Chángshā in the same cases, for the sentence to have a change of state reading, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory; the perfective marker *ta*<sup>21</sup>

cannot stand alone in such a sentence. (13a) - (13b) are the counterparts of (12a) - (12b).

- (13) a. *xua*<sup>33</sup> *xɛn*<sup>13</sup> {*ka*<sup>41</sup> *ta*<sup>21</sup>/*\*ka*<sup>41</sup>/*\*ta*<sup>21</sup>}.  
           flower red      KA PERF    KA PERF  
           'The flowers have turned red.'
- b. *Tsan*<sup>33</sup> *san*<sup>33</sup> *sou*<sup>45</sup> {*ka*<sup>41</sup> *ta*<sup>21</sup>/*\*ka*<sup>41</sup>/*\*ta*<sup>21</sup>}.  
           thin      KA    PERF    KA PERF  
           'Tsansan has become thin.'

The sentences in (13) show that *ka*<sup>41</sup> and *ta*<sup>21</sup> cannot appear on their own to indicate a change of state with stative predicates; if they appear together, the sentences are fine. In comparison with Mandarin, it seems that with stative predicates, *ka*<sup>41</sup> and *ta*<sup>21</sup> together do the job that *le* does in Mandarin on its own. I will come back to this observation later.

### 3.2.1.3 *ka*<sup>41</sup> in BA-sentences

In a BA-sentence, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is also obligatory. I have mentioned the BA-construction in chapter 1, now I will show briefly the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup> in BA-sentences, but I will come back to a more detailed treatment of the BA-construction in section 3.5.2. As we saw in chapter 1, a BA-sentence is a sentence in which the direct object is placed immediately after the particle BA and before the verb (14b). The word order is SOV while the basic order in Chinese languages is SVO. Many sentences have a BA-counterpart, which do not have much difference in meaning. The difference between the two is mostly a matter of information structure. (15) - (16) illustrate the construction.

- (14) a. [S+V+O]  
       b. [S + BA +O +V]
- (15) a. *Zhāngsān xǐ      le      yīfu.*  
           wash      PERF    clothes  
           'Zhangsan washed the clothes.'

b. Zhāngsān bǎ yīfu xǐ le.  
 BA clothes wash PERF  
 'Zhangsan washed the clothes.'

(16) a. Zhāngsān hē le shuǐ.  
 drink PERF water  
 'Zhangsan drank the water.'

b. Zhāngsān bǎ shuǐ hē le.  
 BA water drink PERF  
 'Zhangsan drank the water.'

In (15b) - (16b), the *BA*-NPs *yīfu* 'clothes' and *shuǐ* 'water' are the logical object of the verb *xǐ* 'wash' and *hē* 'drink' respectively. Different from the cases in (15a) - (16a), where they follow the verbs, instead, in *BA*-sentences they are located before the verbs (15b) - (16b).

The *BA*-sentence has been widely discussed for Mandarin. The basic meaning of the construction is 'disposal', it means that 'someone has done something to somebody' (Wáng 1947). But I delay the introduction of the relevant discussion till section 3.5.2. What I focus on now is the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup> in the Chángshā counterpart of the *BA*-construction. As can be seen above, in Mandarin, a *BA*-sentence can be presented in the perfective using the perfective marker *le*, as is the case in a non-*BA*-sentence. However, this is not the case for Chángshā. In Chángshā, to present a *BA*-construction in the perfective, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is always needed.

What I observe is, as with achievements and change-of-state predicates, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory in a *BA*-sentence. It is quite different from a non-*BA*-sentence. We compare a-sentences with b-sentences in (17) - (18). (I use "*BA*" to generalize over the object marker in such sentences in the different varieties of Chinese.)

(17) a. ŋo<sup>41</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> (ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu<sup>33</sup>.  
 1SG wash KA PERF clothes  
 Without *ka*<sup>41</sup>: 'I washed (the) clothes (not necessary finished).'  
 With *ka*<sup>41</sup>: 'I washed the clothes (finished).'

b. ɲo<sup>41</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu<sup>33</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> {ka<sup>41</sup>ta<sup>21</sup>/*\*ka*<sup>41</sup>/*\*ta*<sup>21</sup>}.  
 1SG BA clothes wash KA PERF  
 ‘I washed the clothes (finished).’

- (18) a. ɲo<sup>41</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>41</sup> (ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>45</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup>.  
 1SG read KA PERF DEM CL book  
 Without *ka*<sup>41</sup>: ‘I read (in) that book (not necessary finished).’  
 OR: ‘I read that book (finished).’  
 With *ka*<sup>41</sup>: ‘I read that book (finished).’
- b. ɲo<sup>41</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> la<sup>45</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>41</sup> {ka<sup>41</sup>ta<sup>21</sup>/*\*ka*<sup>41</sup>/*\*ta*<sup>21</sup>}.  
 1SG BA DEM CL book read KA PERF  
 ‘I read that book (finished).’

In (17a) - (18a), *ka*<sup>41</sup> is optional in the sense that its insertion or omission does not affect the grammaticality. But with *ka*<sup>41</sup>, the sentences get a completion reading, while without *ka*<sup>41</sup>, the sentences may indicate termination or completion (we will discuss sentences with bare NP objects in more detail below). In (17b) - (18b), on the other hand, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory, and we see that the events are presented as having reached their final endpoint. More examples can be seen in (19) - (20).

- (19) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> kuan<sup>33</sup> (ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>13</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>shi<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG close KA PERF TV  
 Without *ka*<sup>41</sup>: ‘He turned off the TV  
 (may or may not have succeeded).’  
 With *ka*<sup>41</sup>: ‘He turned off the TV (succeeded).’
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>shi<sup>41</sup> kuan<sup>33</sup> {ka<sup>41</sup>ta<sup>13</sup>/*\*ka*<sup>41</sup>/*\*ta*<sup>21</sup>}.  
 3SG BA TV close KA PERF  
 ‘He turned off the TV (succeeded).’

- (20) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> sha<sup>24</sup> (ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>45</sup> lian<sup>41</sup> ko<sup>45</sup> zen<sup>13</sup>.  
 3SG kill KA PERF that two CL people  
 Without ka<sup>41</sup>: 'He killed those two persons (they may or may not have died).'
- With ka<sup>41</sup>: 'He killed those two persons (definitely died).'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> la<sup>45</sup> lian<sup>41</sup> ko<sup>45</sup> zen<sup>13</sup> sha<sup>24</sup> { ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>/\*ka<sup>41</sup>/\*ta<sup>21</sup> } .  
 3SG BA that two CL persons kill KA PERF  
 'He killed those two persons (definitely died).'

The above shows that in Chángshā, ka<sup>41</sup> is obligatory in the BA-sentences, and optional in non-BA-sentences. While in the same case in Mandarin BA-construction, there is no ka<sup>41</sup> but the meaning is the same as in the Chángshā sentence with ka<sup>41</sup>.

The above sentences are in the perfective, with perfective marker ta<sup>21</sup>. Note that in non-perfective BA-sentences ka<sup>41</sup> is still obligatory; this means that the presence of ka<sup>41</sup> has nothing to do with the perfective. See (21).

- (21) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> i<sup>24</sup> tein<sup>45</sup> mən<sup>13</sup>, tɕiu<sup>21</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> xai<sup>13</sup> tsi t<sup>h</sup>o<sup>24</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG as soon as enter door JIU BA shoes take off KA  
 'He takes off his shoes as soon as he comes into the door.'
- b. uan<sup>45</sup> san<sup>21</sup>, li<sup>41</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> mən<sup>13</sup> kuan<sup>33</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>.  
 evening 2SG BA door close KA  
 'Close the door in the evening.'

In (21a), the BA-sentence describes a habitual situation, (21b) is an imperative. In both cases, ka<sup>41</sup> is obligatory.

To sum up, above, I have introduced different types of contexts in which ka<sup>41</sup> is obligatory. First, with achievements, change-of-state predicates and in the BA-constructions (accomplishments in fact), ka<sup>41</sup> is obligatory in the sense that its omission will cause ungrammaticality. Second, in other cases (the non-BA-counterparts of BA-sentences), the interpretation of a sentence varies depending on whether ka<sup>41</sup> is used, which means that to get a certain meaning, it is obligatory. Without ka<sup>41</sup>, such sentences have two interpretations: either the action has been terminated or completed, while with ka<sup>41</sup>, there is only one

interpretation: the action has been completed or brought to a successful end. We will look at these and similar examples in more detail below, in section 3.2.3.

These circumstances in which *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory are important for me, since they will help me in the analysis of the function of *ka*<sup>41</sup>. But before I get to the analysis, I introduce another type of context, in which *ka*<sup>41</sup> is really optional: the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup> does not lead to differences in acceptability or interpretation. These contexts are resultative constructions, [V+numeral+object] sentences and [V+durative/frequentative+object] sentences. For comparison, I will also mention the corresponding sentences in Mandarin.

### 3.2.2 Optional *ka*<sup>41</sup>

#### 3.2.2.1 *ka*<sup>41</sup> in resultative constructions

A resultative construction contains two predicates, with the second one indicating the result of the action denoted by the first. We have seen this construction in chapter 1. For convenience, (22) is presented for illustration of the resultative construction in Mandarin.

- (22) a. wǒ xiě wán le zuòyè  
 1SG write done PERF homework  
 'I finished my homework.'
- b. Zhāngsān kū hóng le yǎnjīng.  
 cry red PERF eyes  
 'Zhangsan cried his eyes red.'

In (22), *wán* 'done' and *hóng* 'red' indicate the result of the action denoted by *xiě* 'write' and *kū* 'cry'. *le* marks the perfective. In Chángshā, in the same cases, *ta*<sup>21</sup> instead of *le* can be used, and the sentences obtain a completion reading. However, what is interesting is that *ka*<sup>41</sup> can also be added to such sentences. This is illustrated in (23).

- (23) a. ɲo<sup>41</sup>    eiə<sup>41</sup>    oŋ<sup>13</sup>    (ka<sup>41</sup>)    ta<sup>21</sup>    tso<sup>24</sup> iə<sup>24</sup>.  
           1SG    write    done    KA    PERF    homework  
           'I finished my homework.'
- b. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup>    k<sup>h</sup>u<sup>24</sup>    xən<sup>13</sup>    (ka<sup>41</sup>)    ta<sup>21</sup>    ɲiä<sup>41</sup> jin<sup>33</sup>.  
                           cry    red    KA    PERF    eyes  
           'Tsansan cried his eyes red.'

In (23a) - (23b), *ka*<sup>41</sup> can be used but it is optional, although it must be noted that the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup> makes the sentence sound more natural and that there is a subtle difference in the interpretation depending on whether *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used. In sentences with *ka*<sup>41</sup>, the change of state meaning is more prominent, more definitive. More examples can be seen in (24).

- (24) a. tsuo<sup>24</sup> uan<sup>41</sup> shan<sup>41</sup>    ɲo<sup>41</sup>    pəi<sup>21</sup>    lei<sup>13</sup> shən<sup>33</sup>    xə<sup>24</sup>    ɸin<sup>41</sup>    (ka<sup>41</sup>)    ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           last    night    1SG BEI    thunder    scare awake    KA    PERF  
           'I was scared awake by the thunder last night.'
- b. tsi<sup>24</sup> lian<sup>41</sup>    ti<sup>13</sup>    kao<sup>33</sup>    (ka<sup>41</sup>)    ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           quality    raise high    KA    PERF  
           'The quality has been improved.'
- c. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup>    pəi<sup>21</sup>    tən<sup>45</sup> tis    kuan<sup>41</sup>    tao<sup>41</sup>    (ka<sup>41</sup>)    ta<sup>21</sup>.  
                           BEI    bench    stumble    fall    KA    PERF  
           'Tsansan stumbled over the bench.'
- d. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup>    tɛ<sup>h</sup>ia<sup>24</sup>    tsɛ<sup>45</sup>    (ka<sup>41</sup>)    ta<sup>21</sup>.  
                           drink    drunk    KA    PERF  
           'Tsansan got drunk.'

In (24), we see that we can add *ka*<sup>41</sup> to the sentences that already have a result denoting element. As noted, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is optional but with it, these sentences sound more natural. We can interpret this and say that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is preferred.

### 3.2.2.2 *ka*<sup>41</sup> with [V+quantized+object]

*ka*<sup>41</sup> is also optional in sentences with [V+numeral+objects] and [V+durative/frequentative +objects].

- (25) tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> (ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup> san<sup>33</sup>pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
 read KA PERF three CL book  
 'Tsansan has read three books (finished the books).'
- (26) tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> iou<sup>13</sup> (ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup> san<sup>33</sup> ko<sup>41</sup> çiao<sup>41</sup>si<sup>13</sup> iun<sup>41</sup>.  
 swim<sub>v</sub> KA PERF three CL hour swim<sub>N</sub>  
 'Tsansan has swum for three hours (he has stopped now).'
- (27) tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> (ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup> san<sup>33</sup> ko<sup>45</sup> çiao<sup>41</sup>si<sup>13</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
 read KA PERF three CL hours book  
 'Tsansan has read for three hours (he has stopped now).'
- (28) tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> (ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup> san<sup>33</sup>ts<sup>h</sup>1<sup>45</sup> ko<sup>24</sup>pu<sup>21</sup>tian<sup>45</sup>in<sup>41</sup>.  
 watch KA PERF three times DEM CL movie  
 'Tsansan watched this movie three times.'

In (25), the object is quantized (we already saw such sentences in chapter 2), in (26) - (27), a durative phrase *san<sup>33</sup>ko<sup>45</sup>çiao<sup>41</sup>si<sup>13</sup>* 'three hours' is used to modify the duration of the actions and in (28), a frequentative adverb is used. In all these cases, the insertion/omission of *ka<sup>41</sup>* does not lead to any difference in interpretation.

### 3.2.3 Omission/insertion of *ka<sup>41</sup>* leads to different meaning

When we discussed the *BA*-sentences, we saw that the non-*BA*-counterparts of these are ambiguous and that they are disambiguated when *ka<sup>41</sup>* is inserted. We look at some more examples here.

3.2.3.1 ka<sup>41</sup> with [V+bare noun object]

In [V+bare noun object] sentences, the use of ka<sup>41</sup> will lead to a difference in the interpretation; we saw an example in (4), repeated as (31); and here are two more examples:

- (29) a. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> iou<sup>13</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> iun<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           swim<sub>V</sub> KA swim<sub>N</sub> PERF

'Tsansan did a swim.'

- b. tsansan<sup>33</sup> iou<sup>13</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> iun<sup>41</sup>.  
           swim<sub>V</sub> KA PERF swim<sub>N</sub>

'Tsansan did a swim.'

- c. tsansan<sup>33</sup> iou<sup>13</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> iun<sup>41</sup>.  
           swim<sub>V</sub> PERF swim<sub>N</sub>

'Tsansan did a swim.'

OR: 'Tsan swam.'

- (30) a. ŋo<sup>41</sup> p<sup>h</sup>ao<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> pu<sup>21</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           1SG run KA step PERF

'I did a run.'

- b. ŋo<sup>41</sup> p<sup>h</sup>ao<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> pu<sup>21</sup>.  
           1SG run KA PERF step

'I did a run.'

- c. ŋo<sup>41</sup> p<sup>h</sup>ao<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> pu<sup>21</sup>.  
           1SG run PERF step

'I did a run.'

OR: 'I ran.'

- (31) a. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> ei<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu.  
           wash KA PERF clothes

'Tsansan washed the clothes (finished).'

- b. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> ei<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           wash KA clothes PERF

'Tsansan washed the clothes (finished).'

c. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> ɛi<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup> fu .  
 wash PERF clothes

'Tsansan washed the clothes (finished).'

OR: 'Tsansan washed clothes (not finished).'

As we already briefly noticed above (see (17a)), in sentences with a bare noun phrase object, sentences without *ka*<sup>41</sup> may have two readings, completion or termination, but if *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used, there is only one reading, completion. In these sentences, when we have the completion reading, we talk about a predetermined stretch that we would swim or run, or a definite set of clothes to wash. The point of these sentences is that with *ka*<sup>41</sup> there is only one interpretation: the event is presented as having an endpoint, without *ka*<sup>41</sup>, the sentence may have two readings.

### 3.2.3.2 *ka*<sup>41</sup> with [V+definite noun object] (i.e., with a demonstrative)

That the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup> can affect the interpretation of a sentence can also be seen in [V+ definite noun object] accomplishments; we looked at some examples above (e.g., (18a)). Here are the details. Note that with “definite phrase” I refer to an NP which contains a demonstrative.

(32) a. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>45</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
 read PERF that CL book

'Tsansan read in that book (not necessary finished the book).'

OR: 'Tsansan read that book (finished it).'

b. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>45</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
 read KA PERF that CL book

'Tsansan read that book (finished it).'

In (32a), the object noun contains a demonstrative, *ta*<sup>21</sup> is used, and the sentence gets two interpretations. However, if *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used, there is only one interpretation left, (32b). One more example is given in (33).

- (33) a. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> sha<sup>24</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>45</sup> ko<sup>45</sup> zən<sup>13</sup>.  
 kill PERF that CL person  
 'Tsansan killed that person (that person may or may not have died).'
- b. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> sha<sup>24</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>45</sup> ko<sup>45</sup> zən<sup>13</sup>.  
 kill KA PERF that CL person  
 'Tsansan killed that person (the person died).'

Note further that in accomplishments embedded under a modal verb, we can make the same observation.

- (34) tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> ɕian<sup>41</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> (ka<sup>41</sup>) la<sup>45</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
 want read KA that CL book  
 With *ka*<sup>41</sup>: 'Tsansan wanted to read (and finish) that book.'  
 Without *ka*<sup>41</sup>: 'Tsansan wanted to read (in) that book.'
- (35) tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> ɕian<sup>41</sup> sa<sup>24</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> la<sup>45</sup> ko<sup>45</sup> zən<sup>13</sup>.  
 want kill KA that CL person  
 'Tsansan wants to kill that person.'

The sentences in (34) - (35) show that in sentences with a modal verb, *ka*<sup>41</sup> can be used in combination with accomplishments involving a definite noun phrase object. These sentences have an endpoint reading. For instance, in (34), with *ka*<sup>41</sup>, the subject wants to read the whole book, and in (35), with *ka*<sup>41</sup>, the subject wants to really kill that person. Here are some more examples, with *k<sup>h</sup>o<sup>41</sup>i<sup>41</sup>* 'can' instead of *ɕian*<sup>41</sup> 'want'.

- (36) tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>o<sup>41</sup>i<sup>41</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> la<sup>45</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
 can read KA that CL book  
 'Tsansan can read (and finish) that book.'
- (37) tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>o<sup>41</sup>i<sup>41</sup> sha<sup>24</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> la<sup>45</sup> ko<sup>45</sup> zən<sup>13</sup>.  
 can kill KA that CL person  
 'Tsansan can kill that person.'

### 3.2.4 Summary

To sum up, I have shown above three type of contexts in which  $ka^{41}$  is used. In type one,  $ka^{41}$  is obligatory. The deletion of  $ka^{41}$  will make the sentence ungrammatical. These contexts involve achievements, the *BA*-construction and change-of-state predicates. In type two, I pointed out that in accomplishments with a resultative and those with a quantized objects or with postverbal durative/frequentative adverbials,  $ka^{41}$  is optional without leading to a difference in the interpretation of the sentences. In type three,  $ka^{41}$  is optional, but the interpretation of the sentence will vary depending on whether  $ka^{41}$  is used or not. These contexts include VPs containing bare noun objects or noun objects with a demonstrative. As to such sentences with  $ka^{41}$ , they have only one reading, without  $ka^{41}$ , they may have two readings. For convenience, the distribution and interpretation of sentences with  $ka^{41}$  is presented in (38).

(38)

(i)  $ka^{41}$  as obligatory

With achievements, the *BA*-construction, change-of-state predicates

- a. without  $ka^{41}$  → ungrammatical
- b. with  $ka^{41}$  → completion

(ii)  $ka^{41}$  as optional without variation in interpretation

A. with a quantized noun object

- a. without  $ka^{41}$  → completion
- b. with  $ka^{41}$  → completion

B. with resultative constructions

- a. without  $ka^{41}$  → completion
- b. with  $ka^{41}$  → completion

(iii)  $ka^{41}$  as optional with variation of the interpretation of the sentences

A. with a bare noun object

- a. without  $ka^{41}$  → termination or completion
- b. with  $ka^{41}$  → completion

B. with a definite noun object (DEM-N)

- a. without  $ka^{41}$  → termination or completion
- b. with  $ka^{41}$  → completion

As can be seen in (38), sentences with *ka*<sup>41</sup> invariably have a completion reading, and sentences without *ka*<sup>41</sup>, have either termination or completion reading.

The goal of this chapter is to answer the questions: What is the function of *ka*<sup>41</sup> and what is its structural position? Before answering these questions, I introduce two approaches to the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup> in the literature.

### 3.3 Overview of the existing literature

As mentioned before, for a long time, *ka*<sup>41</sup> was treated as a perfective marker. Only recently, it has been noticed that further consideration is required to account for the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup>. In this section, I first introduce two previous approaches and then point out some facts that these two approaches fail to account for.

#### 3.3.1 *ka*<sup>41</sup> as a perfective marker

In works dealing with Xiāng grammar, it is widely assumed that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is a perfective marker. For instance, Lǐ points out that “*ka*<sup>41</sup> is equivalent to *le* in Mandarin, and *le* is supposed to be a perfective marker” (Lǐ, 1991:549). Zhōu (1998) makes a similar claim: “Corresponding to the perfective *le* in Mandarin, the perfective is encoded by the marker *ka*<sup>41</sup> in Xiāng, which is used to signify the completion of the action/activity before another event or time, regardless of the deictical time frames (the past, the present, or the future)” (Zhōu 1998:11). Other authors, such as Cūī (1996) and Lú (2007), also claim that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is a perfective marker. Wǔ (1991, 1994, and 1999) has carried out a comprehensive investigation into the aspectual system of Xiāng. When it comes to *ka*<sup>41</sup>, she holds that “... *ka*<sup>41</sup> is a perfective marker occurring immediately after a verb indicating potential result ...or completion in the structure [V+ *ka*<sup>41</sup> +Q<sup>4</sup>+ (MOD<sup>5</sup>)] and [V<sub>1</sub>+ ASP+ (Q/NP) +V<sub>2</sub>]”<sup>6</sup> (Wǔ 1999:55). To be more specific,

<sup>4</sup> Q indicates objects containing a numeral.

<sup>5</sup> MOD refers to mood particle used to express affirmation, question or exclamative mood.

in Wǔ (1999), the structure [V+ ka<sup>41</sup> +Q+ (MOD)] refers to those structures describing accomplishments that contain quantized objects. Wǔ does not explain what a potential result is. I take it to refer to the constructions that describe telic events including resultatives. For instance, in (39), ka<sup>41</sup> indicates the potential result, in (40) (which we already saw in (1)), ka<sup>41</sup> indicates the completion of the action. (39) - (40) are taken from Wǔ (1999:56).

- (39) a. kən<sup>41</sup>tin<sup>45</sup> xui<sup>21</sup> p<sup>h</sup>ao<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>.  
           be sure      will      run      KA  
           'I am sure (it) will run away.'
- b. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> xai<sup>13</sup> shə<sup>41</sup>pu<sup>45</sup>tə      tiu<sup>33</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>.  
    still      NEG want      throw      KA  
           'Tsansan still does not want to throw it away.'
- (40) a. shan<sup>21</sup>u<sup>41</sup>ŋo<sup>41</sup> mai<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup> tɕiu<sup>21</sup> fe<sup>13</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           morning 1SG buy      KA book then come back PERF  
           'I went back home in the morning after I bought a book.'
- b. ŋo<sup>41</sup> lau<sup>21</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> xau<sup>41</sup>to<sup>33</sup> ɕiau<sup>45</sup>fa<sup>21</sup>.  
           1SG make      KA many      mistake  
           'I made a lot of foolish mistakes.'

Wǔ further points out that ka<sup>41</sup> differs from ta<sup>21</sup> in that ka<sup>41</sup> follows a verb indicating *deletion*, *destruction*, or *consumption*, and it requires that the object contains a numeral.<sup>7</sup>

- (41) a. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> mai<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> san<sup>33</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
           buy      KA three      CL      book  
           'Tsansan bought three books.'

<sup>6</sup> Note that according to Wǔ (1999), ka<sup>41</sup> developed from the verb ɕie<sup>41</sup> meaning 'disappear', 'delete' etc., while ta<sup>21</sup> developed from the verb te<sup>21</sup> that means 'achieve'. In chapter 4 below, I will argue that this is in fact not the case.

<sup>7</sup> Please note that sentences like the ones in (42) and (43) were not presented in the overview of the data above except that they were mentioned at the very beginning (example (1)). I will discuss them in section 3.8. The same holds for the examples in (46)-(47).

- b. \*tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> mai<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
 buy KA book

Intended: 'tsansan bought some books.'

(41a) is grammatical, while (41b) is not. According to Wǔ, the ungrammaticality of (41b) lies in the fact that the object in it does not contain a numeral.

I will discuss Wǔ's approach shortly.

### 3.3.2 ka<sup>41</sup> as an "Extended Event Boundary" marker

Shěn (1995) observes that a numeral phrase can affect the grammaticality of a sentence (see also Lù 1988). For instance, the following a-sentences are ungrammatical; however, if the object contains a numeral, the ungrammaticality disappears (see b-sentences) (from Shěn 1995:371). These sentences are in Mandarin. They are relevant to my analysis in the sense that boundedness in the sentences affects their grammaticality.

- (42) a. \*ch éng wǎn lǐ yú  
 put bowl in fish  
 b. ch éng wǎn lǐ liǎng ti áo yú  
 put bowl in two CL fish  
 '(He) put two fish into the bowl.'
- (43) a. \*s òng xu éxi ào yóuhu à  
 send school painting  
 b. s òng xu éxi ào yī fù yóuhu à  
 send school one CL painting  
 '(He) sent a painting to the school.'

- (44) a. \*chī le píngguǒ.  
       eat PERF apple  
       b. chī le yī ge píngguǒ.  
       eat PERF one CL apple  
       '(He) ate an apple.'

To explain these facts, Shěn first claims that there is a distinction between boundedness vs unboundedness in human cognition. Objects can show distinction between boundedness and unboundedness in space. This is also the case for events, for which the boundary refers to the temporal structure. For instance, *a chair* will take a certain space with its own boundary, while other objects like *water* do not show such features. Similarly, an action takes some time. An action with both starting and endpoint is bounded, while one without an endpoint is unbounded. For instance, *I ran to school* is bounded; while *I miss my family very much* is unbounded.

This contrast between boundedness and unboundedness in human cognition reflects itself in grammatical structure (Shěn 1995:369). For instance, nouns with numeral, definite articles or proper names are bounded, while others like mass nouns and bare nouns are unbounded. Actions with an inherent endpoint are bounded, and those without are unbounded.

Still, the boundedness of objects corresponds to the boundedness of events (Shěn 1995:373). A bounded object is compatible with a bounded event, and vice versa, a bounded event can only be compatible with bounded objects. In Shěn's analysis, verbs are divided into simple action verbs and eventive verbs. For instance, *wash*, *read*, *watch* etc. are simple action verbs; *verb+resultative complement*, *verb+direction* etc. are eventive predicate.

Shěn (1995) claims that the observed influence of [numeral+classifier] on a grammatical structure in (42) - (44) is in fact the indication of the boundedness vs unboundedness distinction in human cognition in grammatical structure. According to him the ungrammaticality of the sentences in (42a) - (44a) can be accounted for: in these sentences, the boundedness of the objects is incompatible with the eventive predicates. The incompatibility between the verb and the object leads to the ungrammaticality. Note that in his analysis,

[*verb+resultative*], [*complement, verb+tendency verb*] and [*verbal +le*] are eventive predicates, which are bounded themselves (Shěn 1995:371).

Following this notion of boundedness, Lǚ (2010) suggests that  $ka^{41}$  should not be treated as a perfective marker; rather it can be seen as an Extended Event Boundary marker. The main function of  $ka^{41}$  is to indicate that an event has been made bounded. Whenever  $ka^{41}$  appears, it indicates that the event is one with a boundary (see (45)).

- (45) a.  $tsan^{33}san^{33} k^h an^{45} ta^{21} xy^{33}$ .  
           read PERF book  
           'Tsansan read in the book.'
- b.  $tsan^{33}san^{33} k^h an^{45} ka^{41} ta^{21} xy^{33}$  .  
           read KA PERF book  
           'Tsansan read the book (finished).'
- c.  $tsan^{33}san^{33} k^h an^{45} ka^{41} ta^{21} san^{33} pən^{41} xy^{33}$ .  
           read KA PERF three CL book  
           'Tsansan read three books (finished).'

In (45a), the event is unbounded and the action is interpreted as being terminated, while in (45b),  $ka^{41}$  is added, and the event is bounded and the action is interpreted as being completed. In (45c), the object contains a numeral, the event is bounded,  $ka^{41}$  can still appear. In this analysis,  $ka^{41}$  functions the same as the numeral in an object, they both make an event bounded. In this sense,  $ka^{41}$  is seen as an event boundary marker.

Yet different from Shěn, Lǚ uses the notion of boundedness in a more generalized sense by proposing that the notion Extended Event Boundary refers not only to a temporal boundary of an event, but also to elements that are used to specify the degree/measurement of an event. The main reason is that the information provided by these elements also plays the role of what Shěn calls an event boundary, an endpoint. The elements that can help provide an event with a boundary include durative expressions, verbal classifiers etc. The point is that whenever these elements appear,  $ka^{41}$  can also appear. See (46) - (47).

- (46) a. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> Li<sup>41</sup> si<sup>41</sup> i<sup>24</sup> ŋan<sup>41</sup>.  
           look KA                   one eye

'Tsansan had a look at Lisi.'

- b. \*tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> Li<sup>41</sup> si<sup>41</sup>.  
           look KA

- c. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>41</sup> Li<sup>41</sup> si<sup>41</sup>.  
           look PERF

'Tsansan looked at Lisi.'

- (47) a. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> p<sup>h</sup>ao<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> san<sup>33</sup> ko<sup>33</sup> çiao<sup>41</sup> si<sup>24</sup>.  
           run KA three CL hour

'Tsansan has run for three hours.'

- b. \*tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> p<sup>h</sup>ao<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> pu<sup>21</sup>.  
           run KA step

- c. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> p<sup>h</sup>ao<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> pu<sup>21</sup>.  
           run PERF step

'Tsansan ran.'

In (46a), the verb *k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>41</sup>* 'look' is an activity predicate and the sentence contains a verbal classifier *i<sup>24</sup> ŋan<sup>41</sup>* 'one eye'. However if we delete the verbal classifier, the sentence is ungrammatical (47b). The verbal classifier provides a boundary for the event: the event comes to an end after Tsansan had a look at Lisi. Without the verbal classifier, *ka<sup>41</sup>* is not acceptable. Note that in the same circumstance, *ta<sup>21</sup>* is acceptable. Similarly, if we leave out the durative adverbial *san<sup>33</sup> ko<sup>33</sup> çiao<sup>41</sup> si<sup>24</sup>* 'three hours' in (47b), the sentence becomes ungrammatical. In Lü's analysis, the verbal classifier *i<sup>24</sup> ŋan<sup>41</sup>* 'one eye' (46a) and the durative phrase *san<sup>33</sup> ko<sup>33</sup> çiao<sup>41</sup> si<sup>24</sup>* 'three hours' (47a) are used to specify a boundary for the events. The use of *ka<sup>41</sup>* in the above can be accounted for using the notion of Extended Event Boundary in the general sense. *ka<sup>41</sup>* in these cases is only used to mark these boundaries in an abstract sense.



comparison with *ka*<sup>41</sup>, *ta*<sup>21</sup> tends to be used with verbs which have an underlying meaning of *to obtain*, *to gain*. Compare (49a) and (49b), taken from Wü (1999:57).

- (49) a. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> mai<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> san<sup>33</sup> kən<sup>33</sup> tɕin<sup>33</sup> pin<sup>13</sup> ko<sup>41</sup>.  
           buy PERF three kilo apple  
           'Tsansan bought three kilos of apples.'
- b. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>41</sup> san<sup>33</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup>.  
           read PERF three CL book  
           'Tsansan read three books.'

According to Wü (1999), the verb in (49a) has a meaning of consumption, hence *ka*<sup>41</sup> is acceptable in the sentence as a perfective marker. The sentence indicates that Tsansan has completed the action of buying apples. However, it is not clear in what sense buying is a case of *consumption*. In (49b), the verb is *k<sup>h</sup>an*<sup>41</sup> 'read', and *ta*<sup>21</sup> is used. However too, Wü does not explain the relation between the action of *k<sup>h</sup>an*<sup>41</sup> 'read' and the sense of 'obtain'.

Hence it can be seen that Wü's generalization that the verbs that *ka*<sup>41</sup> attaches to are those indicating *deletion*, *destruction* and *consumption* is not entirely correct. Furthermore, I observe that *ka*<sup>41</sup> and *ta*<sup>21</sup> are sometimes interchangeable (only when the object contains a numeral, see (49)); both *ka*<sup>41</sup> and *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be used and there is no difference in interpretation, although my informants report that *ka*<sup>41</sup> sounds more natural than *ta*<sup>21</sup> in such cases, regardless of the nature of the verb. The semantics of a verb does not play a big role in distinguishing *ka*<sup>41</sup> from *ta*<sup>21</sup>. What's more, I observe that the verb in (50) can hardly be said to be related to the meaning of *deletion* or *destruction*.

- (50) t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> u<sup>24</sup>li t<sup>h</sup>ɕi<sup>41</sup> {ka<sup>41</sup>/ta<sup>21</sup>} i<sup>21</sup> tən<sup>45</sup> fan<sup>24</sup> tsi<sup>21</sup>.  
           3SG family built KA PERF one CL house  
           'He has built a house.'

*ka*<sup>41</sup> in (50) follows the verb *t<sup>h</sup>ɕi*<sup>41</sup> 'to build'. Obviously, the verb does not have the meaning of *deletion* nor *disappearance*. On the contrary, it indicates the

appearance of something new. So the claim that the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup> is related to the semantic properties of the verbs does not seem to be correct.

Wǔ's observation is correct in the sense that *ka*<sup>41</sup> does, in some cases, express the meaning of completion. However, this should not be seen as a reason for treating *ka*<sup>41</sup> as a perfective marker. See (51):

- (51) a. tsan<sup>33</sup> san tɕ<sup>h</sup>ia<sup>24</sup> (\*ka<sup>41</sup>) pin<sup>13</sup>ko<sup>41</sup>.  
           eat           KA           apple  
           Intended: 'Tsansan ate apple(s).'
- b. tsan<sup>33</sup> san tɕ<sup>h</sup>ia<sup>24</sup> {ta<sup>21</sup>/ \*ka<sup>41</sup>} la<sup>45</sup> tsa<sup>34</sup> pin<sup>13</sup>ko<sup>41</sup>.  
           eat           PERF/ KA       that   CL   apple  
           'Tsansan ate that apple.'  
           'Tsansan finished that apple.'
- c. tsan<sup>33</sup> san tɕ<sup>h</sup>ia<sup>24</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> pin<sup>13</sup>ko<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           eat    KA   apple    PERF  
           'Tsansan has finished eating the apple(s).'

In (51a) - (51b) the same verb is used and in (51a) the object is a bare noun, and in (51b) the object contains a demonstrative. In these two sentences, *ka*<sup>41</sup> cannot be used. So if *ka*<sup>41</sup> is a perfective marker, it is not clear why (51a) - (51b) with *ka*<sup>41</sup> are ungrammatical, especially because we have a verb with the meaning of consumption, so it is the right type of verb according to Wǔ's criteria. Wǔ (1999) points out that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is a perfective marker indicating the completion of an action, under the condition that the sentence must have a quantized object. That would, however, make *ka*<sup>41</sup> a very special aspect marker, if it is sensitive to the nature of the object. Smith (1997) points out that generally any eventive predicates can be presented in the perfective, and (51b) shows that this sentence is not an exception: with *ta*<sup>21</sup> it is grammatical. We may assume that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is a special perfective marker. But that will be too ad hoc.

Similarly, a sentence like (52a) can be made grammatical by adding the adverb *ts<sup>h</sup>ai<sup>13</sup>* 'just'.

- (52) a. \*tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> mai<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> pin<sup>13</sup> ko<sup>41</sup>.  
           buy   KA   apple  
 b. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> ts<sup>h</sup>ai<sup>13</sup> mai<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> pin<sup>13</sup> ko<sup>41</sup>.  
           just   buy   KA   apple  
 'Tsansan has just bought (some) apples.'

ka<sup>41</sup> in (52a) is unacceptable, but it is acceptable in (52b). The only difference between the two sentences is that in the latter, the adverb ts<sup>h</sup>ai<sup>13</sup> 'just' has been added. The examples in (51) - (52) show that ka<sup>41</sup> is sensitive not only to the properties of the object but also to other things, such as the presence of ta<sup>21</sup> or the adverb ts<sup>h</sup>ai<sup>13</sup> 'just'. So treating ka<sup>41</sup> as a perfective marker just as ta<sup>21</sup> requires further consideration. (As mentioned, I return to these sentences in section 3.8.)

In what follows I present some further observations that show that ka<sup>41</sup> should not be treated in the same way as ta<sup>21</sup>, a perfective marker.

The first observation is related to one of the prominent properties of Chángshā. That is, as we have discussed at length above, in achievements (53), change-of-state predicates (54) and in BA-sentences (55) in the perfective, ka<sup>41</sup> and ta<sup>21</sup> are both required to appear. We saw many examples already; here are some more:

- (53) a. \*tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> tau<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>/ ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           arrive KA PERF  
 b. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> tau<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           arrive KA PERF  
 'Tsansan has arrived.'

- (54) a. \*t<sup>h</sup>ian<sup>33</sup> tçi<sup>41</sup> lən<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>/ ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           weather cold KA / PERF  
 b. t<sup>h</sup>ian<sup>33</sup> tçi<sup>41</sup> lən<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           weather cold KA PERF  
 'It turned cold.'

- (55) a. \*ŋo<sup>41</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu ɕi<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>/ta<sup>21</sup>.  
 1SG BA clothes wash KA / PERF  
 b. ŋo<sup>41</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu ɕi<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
 1SG BA clothes wash KA PERF  
 'I have washed the clothes.'

In these sentences, both *ka*<sup>41</sup> and *ta*<sup>21</sup> are obligatory, which is unexpected if *ka*<sup>41</sup> and *ta*<sup>21</sup> are both perfective markers.

My second observation is related to negative sentences. As we already saw in the previous chapter, in Chángshā, the negative particle *mau*<sup>21</sup> is like the negative marker *mǎ* (*yǒu*) 'not (have)' in Mandarin, in which capacity it never co-occurs with perfective marker *ta*<sup>21</sup> (because it is supposed to be a perfective marker itself; see chapter 2 above for more details). *Mau*<sup>21</sup> is, however, compatible with *ka*<sup>41</sup>:

- (56) tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>/\*ta<sup>21</sup> san<sup>33</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup>.  
 NEG read KA/ PERF three CL book  
 'Tsansan has not finished reading three books.'

- (57) tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>/\*ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu<sup>24</sup>.  
 NEG wash KA / PERF clothes  
 'Tsansan did not finish washing his clothes.'

If *mau*<sup>21</sup> is incompatible with *ta*<sup>21</sup> because *ta*<sup>21</sup> is a perfective marker, it is not clear why it is compatible with *ka*<sup>41</sup> if that is also a perfective marker. One possible explanation is that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is not a perfective aspect marker, while *ta*<sup>21</sup> is.

To sum up, the above facts show that *ta*<sup>21</sup> is acceptable as a way of expressing the perfective, while *ka*<sup>41</sup> is not. Therefore, basing myself on the above observations, I conclude that *ka*<sup>41</sup> and *ta*<sup>21</sup> should be treated differently. *ka*<sup>41</sup> should not be treated as a perfective marker. In the following, I point out that it is also not sufficient to treat *ka*<sup>41</sup> as an Extended Event Boundary marker.

### 3.4.2 *ka*<sup>41</sup> is not an "Extended Event Boundary" marker

As we saw, noticing the distribution and interpretational properties of *ka*<sup>41</sup>, Lü (2010) proposed that *ka*<sup>41</sup> should not be treated as a perfective marker, but that it should be seen as an Extended Event Boundary marker instead. By Extended Event Boundary, Lü referred both to the boundary as an inherent property of events and to the temporal boundary provided externally. The boundary can be specified by the information from an argument (i.e. an object with a numeral), a measuring phrase, a durative phrase or something else.

Yet this approach also leaves many questions unanswered. For example, the relation between *ka*<sup>41</sup> and the Extended Event Boundary is unclear. It is not clear whether the event boundary licenses the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup>, or whether *ka*<sup>41</sup> marks the Extended Event Boundary, since in some cases, *ka*<sup>41</sup> seems to accompany elements which are considered to be event boundaries, while in some other cases, *ka*<sup>41</sup> seems to provide an event with an event boundary. Relevant examples are repeated in (58).

- (58) a. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> san<sup>33</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup>.  
           read KA three CL book  
           'Tsansan read three books (finished).'
- b. \*tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup>.  
           read KA book
- c. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> xu<sup>33</sup>.  
           read KA PERF book  
           'Tsansan read the book (finished).'

In (58a), there is an inherent boundary, *ka*<sup>41</sup> can be used, in (58b) the object is a bare noun, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is excluded, while when in the same case the perfective marker *ta*<sup>21</sup> is used, *ka*<sup>41</sup> becomes acceptable (58c). If *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used to mark an Extended Event Boundary, it is not clear what *ka*<sup>41</sup> does in (58a) where there is already an inherent boundary.

Secondly, Lü's notion of Extend Event Boundary marker is too language specific and it is anyhow not clear why we need such a marker in the structure.

Finally, by treating  $ka^{41}$  as an Extend Event Boundary, the relation between  $ka^{41}$  and  $ta^{21}$  is still confusing, since there are cases in which  $ka^{41}$  does seem to function as a perfective marker. For example, in (58a),  $ka^{41}$  can stand alone. Therefore, the ambiguity of the status of  $ka^{41}$  needs further clarification. The rest of this chapter will go into questions like these.

### 3.4.3 Summary

In section 3.4, I have reviewed the previous analyses of the use of  $ka^{41}$ . I argued that  $ka^{41}$  should not be treated as a perfective marker because the analyses cannot account for the fact that  $ka^{41}$  is only accepted in activities, achievements and accomplishments under certain conditions, while  $ta^{21}$  is acceptable without these conditions. I also mentioned that it is not explanatory to call  $ka^{41}$  an Extended Event Boundary marker. In the rest of this chapter, we will provide a new analysis of  $ka^{41}$  which does justice to all its properties.

## 3.5 Interpreting $ka^{41}$ : $ka^{41}$ doubles an endpoint

In this section, I re-examine the semantic interpretation of  $ka^{41}$  before I propose a new analysis. I point out that  $ka^{41}$  is used to double an endpoint that is already there and that its function is to mark the existing endpoint as definitive and absolute. As such it shields the process preceding the endpoint from being available for syntactic operations. I will develop this analysis in reference to the inner aspect structure introduced and discussed in chapters 1 and 2. We start out from looking at contexts in which  $ka^{41}$  is obligatory.

### 3.5.1 Interpreting $ka^{41}$ in achievements

We have seen in section 3.2.1.1 that  $ka^{41}$  is obligatory in achievements. Not having  $ka^{41}$  will cause ungrammaticality. The property of an achievement is that it represents a spontaneous transition between states (Vendler 1967, Dowty 1979, Smith 1997, Rothstein 2004). Achievements are lexically

endowed with an inherent endpoint. Mandarin achievements, here in the perfective, are illustrated in (59).

- (59) a. Zhāngsān zǒu le.  
           leave PERF  
           'Zhansan left.'
- b. bēizi pò le.  
       cup break PERF  
       'The cup broke.'
- c. zhè chǎng bǐsài Zhāngsān yíng le.  
    DEM CL match win PERF  
    'Zhangsan won the match.'
- d. chuán fān le  
    boat turnover PERF  
    'The boat turned over.'

Sentences (59a) - (59d) are expressions of achievements in the perfective in Mandarin, marked by perfective marker *le*. In Chángshā, however, in the same contexts, we see that, in addition to the element which we recognized as the perfective marker in the previous chapter, *ta*<sup>21</sup>, we have an extra element, *ka*<sup>41</sup>; the lack of *ka*<sup>41</sup> leads to ungrammaticality. The counterpart of (59) is in (60) in Chángshā.

- (60) a. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> tsou<sup>45</sup> {ka<sup>41</sup>ta<sup>21</sup>/ \*ka<sup>41</sup>/ \*ta<sup>21</sup>}.  
           leave KA PERF
- b. pei<sup>33</sup> tsi p<sup>h</sup>o<sup>45</sup> {ka<sup>41</sup>ta<sup>21</sup>/ \*ka<sup>41</sup>/ \*ta<sup>21</sup>}.  
       cup break KA PERF  
       'The cup has broken.'
- c. tsə<sup>41</sup> tsan<sup>13</sup> pi<sup>21</sup>sai<sup>41</sup> Tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> in<sup>13</sup> {ka<sup>41</sup>ta<sup>21</sup>/ \*ka<sup>41</sup>/ \*ta<sup>21</sup>}  
    DEM CL match win KA PERF  
    'Tsansan won the match.'
- d. tɕuan<sup>13</sup> fan<sup>33</sup> {ka<sup>41</sup>ta<sup>21</sup>/ \*ka<sup>41</sup>/ \*ta<sup>21</sup>}  
    boat turn over KA PERF  
    'The boat turned over.'



shows that the endpoint in achievements in Chángshā cannot be cancelled. We can also test this by conjoining a sentence containing such a verb with a negative sentence. See (62).

- (62) a. \*tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> lai<sup>13</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>, ko<sup>41</sup>shi xai<sup>13</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> tau<sup>41</sup>.  
           come KA PERF but yet NEG arrive  
           Intended: 'Tsangsan has come, but he did not arrive yet.'
- b. \*la<sup>45</sup> tən<sup>45</sup> fan<sup>13</sup> tsi k<sup>h</sup>ua<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>, ko<sup>41</sup>shi xai<sup>13</sup>  
       DEM CL house fall KA PERF, but yet  
       mau<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ua<sup>41</sup> xia<sup>21</sup> kə<sup>45</sup>.  
       NEG fall down go  
       Intended: 'That house fell, but did not fall down.'

In (62a) - (62b), the conjunction with the construction negating the completion of the action is not acceptable. This shows that the endpoint in achievements is entailed, and not just implied. After all, implications are cancellable; entailments are not.

Given that the endpoint in achievements in Chángshā cannot be an implication, as we have just seen, we are forced to choose the other possibility, namely that the endpoint (here change of state) in an achievement is inherent, just as in other languages. We suggest that what differentiates Chángshā from some other languages is that in the former, apart from an inherent endpoint we still need another element: the inherent endpoint is doubled. *ka*<sup>41</sup> is such an element. *ka*<sup>41</sup> indicates that the endpoint is definitely there.

We conclude that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is required by the verb, but strictly speaking, since so far we have only seen that *ka*<sup>41</sup> in perfective sentences, co-occurring with *ta*<sup>21</sup>, it is thus possible that the properties of *ta*<sup>21</sup> require the presence of *ka*<sup>41</sup> to express an achievement in the perfective. However, this is not the case. First, I showed in chapter 2 that *ta*<sup>21</sup> is a perfective marker, just like *le* in Mandarin, and I also showed that *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be used to indicate that an event has been completed when the object in an accomplishment contains a numeral. We have seen (63), I repeat it here for convenience ((63b) is Mandarin).

- (63) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tɕia<sup>24</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> san<sup>33</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> pin<sup>13</sup>ko<sup>24</sup>.  
 3SG eat PERF three CL apple  
 'He ate three apples up.'
- b. tā chī le sān ge píngguǒ.  
 3SG eat PERF three CL apple  
 'He ate three apples.'

The object in (63a) contains a numeral, and *ta*<sup>21</sup> expresses completion, (63b) is the counterpart of (63a) in Mandarin. This shows that *ta*<sup>21</sup> can by itself indicate the completion of an action when the endpoint is available in the event, without requiring the presence of *ka*<sup>41</sup>. So if it is not *ta*<sup>21</sup> which requires *ka*<sup>41</sup>, it must be the achievement verb. One may be wondering if achievements should always co-occur with *ka*<sup>41</sup>. They do when reference is made to a specific event, like in "He arrives tomorrow". In these cases *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory. When that is not the case, like in "He always wins", see (64d), we do not have *ka*<sup>41</sup>.

- (64) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tso<sup>13</sup>tian<sup>33</sup> in<sup>13</sup> \*(ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup>.  
 3SG yesterday win KA PERF  
 'He won yesterday.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> min<sup>13</sup>tian<sup>33</sup> tɕiu<sup>21</sup> tau<sup>45</sup> \*(ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup>.  
 3SG tomorrow just arrive KA PERF  
 'He is just arriving tomorrow.'
- c. mɛi<sup>41</sup>thsi<sup>45</sup> tou<sup>33</sup> si<sup>21</sup> tsansan in<sup>13</sup> \*(ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup>.  
 everytime all be win KA PERF  
 'Everytime it is Zhangsan who wins.'
- d. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tsən<sup>41</sup> si<sup>21</sup> in<sup>13</sup>.  
 3SG always win  
 'He always wins.'

This is also confirmed by the examples we saw in section 3.2.1.1, one of which is repeated here as (65), which show that an achievement predicate needs *ka*<sup>41</sup>, even when it is not in the perfective.

- (65) la<sup>45</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> niao<sup>41</sup> kan<sup>45</sup>ian<sup>21</sup>tsi i<sup>24</sup>-tin<sup>21</sup>xui<sup>21</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>.  
 DEM CL bird from.the.look.of.it be sure die KA  
 'The bird seems to be sure to die.'

What we observe is that achievements are verbs with an endpoint and that whenever we have an achievement, ka<sup>41</sup> also appears. There seems to be a relation between telicity and the appearance of ka<sup>41</sup>. Note that in the same cases in Mandarin, no extra element is needed: (65) can be said in Mandarin as (66):

- (66) nǐ zhi niǎo kàn yàngzi / yǐng huì sǐ.  
 DEM CL bird from.the.look.of.it/be sure will die  
 'That bird looked as if it will die.'

I will now turn to ka<sup>41</sup> used with statives turned into change-of-state predicates.

### 3.5.2 Interpreting ka<sup>41</sup> in stative predicates

As shown in section 3.2.4, ka<sup>41</sup> appears with a stative verb in combination with perfective marker ta<sup>21</sup>. As we noted, in these contexts, stative predicates get a change of state reading. This can be seen in (67) - (68).

- (67) a. \*xua<sup>33</sup> xǒ<sup>13</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           flower red PERF  
 b. xua<sup>33</sup> xǒ<sup>13</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           flower red KA PERF  
           'The flowers have become red.'
- (68) a. \*t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> sou<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           3SG thin PERF  
 b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> sou<sup>45</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           3SG thin KA PERF  
           'He has become thin.'



- (72) a. stative predicate + *ka*<sup>41</sup> + *ta*<sup>21</sup> → change of state reading  
 b. stative predicate + *le* → change of state reading

If Mandarin can do it with the perfective marker alone, what is *ka*<sup>41</sup> in Chángshā?

Before we deal with the differences between these two languages, we first see how we can explain the case of statives in the perfective with a change of state reading, in addition to the reference to Huang (2017) given above.

Change of state readings arising from the combination of the perfective aspect and a stative verbs are not unknown. Chung and Timberlake (1985:217), Comrie (1976:19), Moens and Steedman (1988), Jackendoff (1997), Pustejovsky (1995), Krifka (1998), de Swart (1998, 2000), Bonami (2007) and Flouraki (2006) among others have reported such cases. Many languages like Russian and Modern Greek are said to exhibit such phenomena. Some sentences are used in the following for illustration.

(73) Russian

Imperfective		perfective	
ponimat'	'understand'	ponjat	'come to understand'
verit'	'believe'	poverit'	'come to believe'
lubit'	'love'	polubit'	'come to love'

(74) Modern Greek

- a. O Giannis agapouse ti Maria.  
 The Giannis loved. IMPERF.3sg the Maria  
 'The Giannis loved/used to love Maria' (basic meaning)
- b. O Giannis agapise ti Maria.  
 The Giannis loved. PERF.3sg the Maria  
 'The Giannis fell in love with Maria' (inchoative meaning)

(73) - (74) show that a state gets a basic interpretation when combined with the imperfective aspect, and an inchoative meaning when combined with the perfective aspect.

To explain why a perfective aspect marker can be used to express a change of state reading in stage-level predicates, Comrie (1976:20) states that:

There may be some sense in saying that since states are less likely to be described by perfective forms than are events (including entries into states), then there is some functional value in utilising the perfective forms of stative verbs to denote the event of entry into the appropriate state, since otherwise there would be little use for the perfective forms of these verbs.

Based on Comrie (1976), we may assume that these so-called stative verbs are actually not stative at all: they are used to express a process of becoming *x*, and it is this process that has an endpoint. In other words, the statives we are mentioning here are in fact change-of-state verbs, rather than general stative verbs. That is why (70) - (71) can have a change of state reading. This is possible, since in Mandarin there is no morphological difference between adjectives and verbs. An adjective can be used as a predicate without a copular verb. The same is true in Chángshā. If that is the case, then the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup> with such stative predicates is like its use in other cases that we have reviewed where we found, on independent grounds, that they involved an inherent endpoint, like with achievements and in *BA*- sentences, that is, it is used to double the endpoint.

Before I close this section, I would like to introduce some other analyses about the use of *le* with statives in Mandarin. I will focus on Lín (2004) and point out that Lín's analysis can help me support my interpretation of *ka*<sup>41</sup>.

That aspect marker *le* can occur with certain stative verbs in Mandarin has been analyzed in many different ways. For convenience, I repeat (70) - (71) in (75) - (76).

- (75) huā      hóng    le.  
       flower red    PERF  
       'The flowers have become red.'

- (76) tā shòu le.  
 3SG thin PERF  
 'He has become thin.'

(75) - (76) show that two stative verbs, *hóng* 'red' and *shòu* 'thin', appearing in the perfective, and the sentences acquire a change-of-state reading. To explain the use of the perfective marker *le*, Cháo (1968:699) proposes, "It implies a change from a different previous condition". Similarly, Cháng (2003) proposes that aspect marker *le*, when occurring with a stage-level predicate, is able to evoke a boundary (i.e., the beginning of a situation). Cháng mainly bases his analysis on Talmy (1988) and Smith (1997), who claim that the adverbial *chà bù duō/jīhū* 'almost' occurs in an environment with a designated boundary (an endpoint). Cháng observes that a stative predicate with *le* can be modified by the adverbial *chà bù duō/jīhū* 'almost'. He argues that the adverb in the sentence can refer to the boundary evoked by *le*.

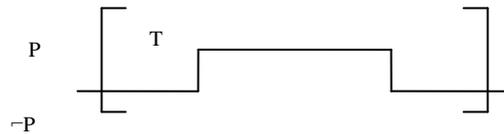
Li & Thompson (1981:188) claim that *le* suggests a bounded situation. They hold that "it links a change of state and the pre-inceptive situation into succession, converting a state verb into an achievement verb". In line with Li & Thompson (1981), Smith (1997:286) holds that *le* changes a stative verb into an activity verb, but no implementation of the process of changing has been provided by Smith (1997).

From the above, it can be seen that Cháo (1968), Li & Thompson (1981) and Smith (1997) share the idea that verb *le* is related to a change of state reading, but differ in the origin of the change of state reading. *le* implies or evokes a change of state reading as is suggested by Cháo (1968), or changes a state into an achievement verb as is suggested by Li & Thompson (1981) and Smith (1997). Yet the two approaches are not satisfactory. For example, for the "evoking" approach, it is not clear why the perfective *le* is able to evoke a boundary only in stative predicates, but not in other cases. For the "converting" approach, it is not clear how *le* as a perfective marker can change a stative into an achievement.

Different from the above, Lín (2004) makes the relation between the perfective and the "evoked boundary" in stative predicates more apparent. In dealing with "perfective statives" in Mandarin, Lín (2004:86) proposes that there is a covert inchoative verbalizing head  $v_0$  that gives rise to the change of state

reading. With this functional element in place, the perfective aspect behaves according to the standard definition: it indicates the endpoint has been reached. Or, in Lin's terms, it indicates the temporal configuration in which situation time (the transition from  $\neg P$  to  $P$ ) is contained in topic time. The time-course diagram in (77) captures the interpretation of a stative verb viewed perfectly (from Lín 2004:85).

(77)



In short, Lín's analysis assumes that the change of state reading in stative predicates in the perfective in Mandarin comes from a covert inchoative verbalizing head  $v_{\delta}$ .

In line with Lin's analysis, I further point out that we can in fact observe that the covert verbalizing head can sometimes be lexically realized by the verb *biàn* 'become'.

- (78) a. huā      hóng    le.  
          flower   red    PERF  
          'The flowers have become red.'
- b. huā      biàn    hóng    le.  
          flower   become   red    PERF  
          'The flowers have become red.'

- (79) a. tā      shòu    le.  
          3SG   thin    PERF  
          'He has become thin.'
- b. tā      biàn    shòu    le.  
          3SG   become   thin    PERF  
          'He has become thin.'

In (78b) - (79b), the verb *biàn* ‘become’ is added without leading to a difference in interpretation. These sentences show that it makes sense to assume a verbal element indicating the change of state reading in statives when presented in the perfective. In what follows, I show that this analysis of statives in the perfective can also find support from lexical morphology indicating a change of state reading.

To start, I would like to point out that the analyses so far center on the observation that a change of state reading arises in a stative predicate in the perfective in different languages. What these languages share is that the reading arises when the stative predicates are in the perfective. The reading of change of state is indicated by a syntactic element overt or non-overt in these languages. However, in the following we are going to see that in some other languages the change of state reading with stative predicates shows close morphological relation with the corresponding property denoting adjectives. The following examples are used for illustration.

(80) English (Koontz-Garboden 2005:188)

- a. The knot is loose. (ADJECTIVE)
- b. The knot is loosened. (NON-CAUSATIVE COS (CHANGE OF STATE))
- c. Alex loosened the knot. (CAUSATIVE COS)

(81) O’odham (Hale and Keyser 1998:92)

	ADJECTIVE	NON-CAUSATIVE COS	CAUSATIVE	COS
a.	(s-)weg	weg-i	weg-i-(ji)d	‘red’
b.	(s-)moik	moik-a	moik-a-(ji)d	‘soft’
c.	(s-)'oam	'oam-a	'oam-a-(ji)d	‘yellow’

(82) Warlpiri (Hale & Keyser 1998:93)

	ADJECTIVE	NON-CAUSATIVE COS	CAUSATIVE COS	
a.	wiri	wiri-jarri-	wiri-ma	‘big’
b.	maju	maju-jarri-	maju-ma-	‘bad’

The data in (80) - (82) show that in English, O’odham and Warlpiri, words denoting property concept states and their related changes of state are not

morphologically identical, although they share the same root. Koontz-Garboden suggests that in these languages, a verb denoting a change of state is derived from the property concept denoting adjective/noun by way of some kind of morphological process (for more details, see Koontz-Garboden 2005). (79) - (81) show the change of state reading with stative predicate may be realized in the form of affixes.

To sum up, in the above I have introduced two approaches dealing with the change of state reading produced by stative predicates. In Lín (2004), a non-overt verbalized head expresses the change of state reading. In Koontz-Garboden (2005), the change of state reading in some languages is derived from the property denoting adjectives through a morphological process. The above discussion show that the ways expressing a change of state reading vary. It can be done syntactically by a syntactic head, which may be overt or non-overt. It can also be done through a morphological process. For convenience, I present the two ways indicating the change of state meaning in different languages in Table 1.

Table 1 Ways indicating a change of state reading with a stative predicate

Ways of expressing a change of state reading	Languages	Morphology
Syntactic encoding	Mandarin/ Chángshā	∅
Morphological process	English	-en

Table 1 shows that languages may use different ways to express the change of state reading with a stative predicate presented in the perfective. It may be done through a morphological process in languages like English. It may also be done by a syntactic process in which an overt/non-overt element is part of the syntactic structure in languages like Mandarin and Chángshā. For instance in Mandarin, usually a covert element is used, though in some cases, the covert form can be realized in the form of the lexical verb *biàn* 'change'; while in Chángshā, it is always realized with *ka*<sup>41</sup>.

With the above analysis, we can now rewrite (72b) in (83).

(83) stative predicate + ∅ + *le* → change of state reading

(83) shows that in Mandarin, there is a covert element in a stative presented in the perfective. Let us assume that this is the element that is responsible for the change of state reading. Moving to Chángshā we can, in view of (75a) then take it that ka<sup>41</sup> then is an overt element that is responsible for turning states into change-of-state predicates. We rewrite (72) in (84).

- (84) a. stative predicate + ka<sup>41</sup> + ta<sup>21</sup> → change of state reading  
 b. stative predicate +  $\emptyset$  + le → change of state reading

However enticing it may be to analyze ka<sup>41</sup> as a syntactic or morphological element that changes a state into a change-of-state predicate, it turns out that, on closer consideration, it does not hold water. First, we find that ka<sup>41</sup> and the element *biàn* 'become' (*pian*<sup>45</sup> in Chángshā) which we introduced as the verbalizing head in Mandarin above can appear in Chángshā. (67) - (68) are rewritten in Chángshā in (85) - (86).

- (85) a. \*xua<sup>33</sup> xǎ<sup>13</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           flower red PERF  
 b. xua<sup>33</sup> xǎ<sup>13</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           flower red KA PERF  
           'The flowers have become red.'  
 c. xua<sup>33</sup> pian<sup>45</sup> xǎ<sup>13</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           flower become red PERF  
           'The flowers have become red.'

- (86) a. \*t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> sou<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           3SG thin PERF  
 b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> sou<sup>45</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           3SG thin KA PERF  
           'He has become thin.'  
 c. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> pian<sup>45</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> sou<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           3SG become KA thin PERF  
           'He has become thin.'

In (85b) *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used, and in (85c) the verb *pian*<sup>45</sup> 'become' is used, the two sentences have the same interpretation. The same is true in (86). This shows that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is not the realization of the covert verbalizing head. What's more, the fact that *ka*<sup>41</sup> and *pian*<sup>45</sup> can co-occur further supports the idea that *ka*<sup>41</sup> should not be seen as the lexical realization of the covert verbalizing head.

- (87) a. xua<sup>33</sup> pian<sup>45</sup> xǝ<sup>13</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           flower change red KA PERF  
           'The flowers have turned red.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> pian<sup>45</sup> shou<sup>45</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           3SG become thin KA PERF  
           'He has become thin.'

In (87), both *ka*<sup>41</sup> and *pian*<sup>45</sup> 'become' are used, with no consequences for the interpretation. All these cases show that *ka*<sup>41</sup> should not be seen as the overt realization of the verbalizing head.

On the basis of this discussion, we are now ready to provide an answer to the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup> in these change-of-state cases. As in the other cases with an inherent endpoint, such as the achievements we discussed above and the BA-sentences to be discussed below, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used in these change-of-state predicates just to double the endpoint. The question why exactly it does so will be answered shortly.

Note also that, just like with achievements, *ka*<sup>41</sup> does not only show up with change-of-state predicates in the perfective. When we embed such a predicate under a modal, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is preferably present as well.

- (88) a. li<sup>41</sup> tsai<sup>45</sup> xo<sup>24</sup> tixua<sup>21</sup> xui<sup>21</sup> tse<sup>45</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>.  
           2SG again drink if will drunk KA  
           'If you continue to drink more, you are bound get drunk.'
- b. ??li<sup>41</sup> tsai<sup>45</sup> xo<sup>24</sup> tixua<sup>21</sup> xui<sup>21</sup> tse<sup>45</sup>.  
           2SG again drink if will drunk  
           'If you continue to drink more, you may get drunk.'

Although (88b) is not completely ungrammatical, (88a), with ka<sup>41</sup> is clearly preferred.

If these conclusions are right, I can provide an answer to the differences between Mandarin and Chángshā. In both languages, the change of state reading with a stative predicate in the perfective comes from an inchoative verbalizing head. The difference between the two languages lies in the fact that in Chángshā there is an extra element, ka<sup>41</sup>, to double the endpoint, while in Mandarin there isn't. Given this consideration, we modify (84) and rewrite it in (89) (order of the different elements is irrelevant).

- (89) a. stative predicate +  $\emptyset$ +ka<sup>41</sup>+ta<sup>21</sup> → change of state reading (Chángshā)  
 b. stative predicate +  $\emptyset$ +  $\emptyset$  + le → change of state reading (Mandarin)

(89) shows in both Mandarin and Chángshā there is a covert element, an inchoative verbalizing head  $v_8$  in terms of Lín (2004), in a stative predicate. When it is presented in the perfective, the event gets a change of state reading. What is different between these two languages is that in Chángshā, there is still another particle, ka<sup>41</sup>, which is used to double the endpoint.

In what follows, I provide an analysis of the interpretation of ka<sup>41</sup> in the BA-construction. I will show that the function of ka<sup>41</sup> to double an endpoint can also be identified in the BA-construction.

### 3.5.3 Interpreting ka<sup>41</sup> in the BA-constructions

As we noted above (section 3.2.1.3), ka<sup>41</sup> is obligatory in BA-sentences; the omission of ka<sup>41</sup> makes the sentence ungrammatical.

- (90) a. \*ŋo<sup>41</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu ɕi<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           1SG BA clothes wash PERF  
 b. ŋo<sup>41</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu ɕi<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           1SG BA clothes wash KA PERF  
           'I washed the clothes.'

- (91) a. \*tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> la<sup>54</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>54</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           BA DEM CL book read PERF

- b. tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> la<sup>54</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>54</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
 BA DEM CL book read KA PERF  
 'Tsansan read that book.'

In sentences (90) - (91), we see that without *ka*<sup>41</sup> the sentence is ungrammatical, while in Mandarin no extra particle is required in such sentences. Note that in Mandarin, *wán* 'done, finish' can, but does not have to, appear: in Mandarin, the perfective marker *le* can do the job alone. We can compare the sentences in (90a) - (91a) with those in (92) from Mandarin.

- (92) a. wǒ bǎ yīfu xǐ le.  
 1SG BA clothes wash PERF  
 'I washed the clothes.'  
 b. wǒ bǎ nà běn shū kàn le.  
 1SG BA that CL book read PERF  
 'I read that book.'

In (92), the two *BA*-sentences are presented in the perfective marked by *le*. In comparison with Mandarin, we see that in similar cases, Chángshā requires one more particle. So in what respects are Mandarin and Chángshā *BA*-sentences different? Do *BA*-sentences in these languages have different properties? Are the perfective markers different? Or is something else going on?

On the basis of what we discussed in the previous chapter and the preceding paragraphs of this chapter, it is unlikely that the perfective markers in these two languages are different. As we saw, just like Chángshā *ta*<sup>21</sup>, verbal *le* is a perfective marker in the sense that it provides a termination/completion reading. That is, in a telic event, *le* indicates the completion of the action, whereas in an atelic event it refers to the termination of the action (see Li and Thompson 1981, Ross 1995, Smith 1997 and Soh & Kuo 2007; and chapter 2 above).

To have a better overview of the problems we are now facing, I show the surface patterns of perfective non-*BA*-sentences and the corresponding *BA*-sentences in these two languages respectively in (93) - (94):

- (93) non-BA-construction and BA-construction in Chángshā
- a. [V + (ka<sup>41</sup>) + ta<sup>21</sup> + definite NP]
  - b. [BA + definite NP + V + ka<sup>41</sup> + ta<sup>21</sup>]
- (94) non-BA-construction and BA-construction in Mandarin
- a. [V + le + definite NP]
  - b. [BA + definite NP + V + le].

The pattern in (93a) - (94a) shows that the perfective aspect in these two languages is expressed by ta<sup>21</sup> and le respectively. However, if it is the BA-construction, in Mandarin, we can make do with perfective marker le alone, while in Chángshā, next to perfective marker ta<sup>21</sup>, we also need ka<sup>41</sup>. So, looking at the surface orders in (93) - (94), we actually have two questions to answer. The first is why Mandarin and Chángshā are different, the second is why ka<sup>41</sup> is obligatory in a BA-sentence while it is optional in a non-BA-sentence. As to the latter point, we will see that the difference is actually only apparent.

To answer these questions, we need to first consider what properties the BA-construction has that make the use of ka<sup>41</sup> obligatory.

In what follows, we take as our point of departure the idea that the BA-construction contains an inherent endpoint. This idea is basic to most analyses of the BA-construction. It is most explicitly expressed in the Sybesma (1992, 1999) where the point is made that the NP following BA always originates as the subject of a resultative, that is, an endpoint denoting element. According to Sybesma (1999), every BA-sentence contains an endpoint, without an endpoint, no BA-sentence can be formed. This can be seen from the different interpretations in (95), where (95a) is a non-BA-sentence, while (95b) is a BA-sentence.

- (95) a. tā kàn le nǎ běn shū.  
       3SG read PERF that CL book  
       (i) 'He read in that book.'  
       (ii) 'He read that book (finished it).'

b. tā   bǎ   nǎ   běn   shū   kàn   le.  
 3SG BA that CL book read PERF  
 'He read that book (finished).'

The sentence in (95a) is ambiguous: it has either a termination reading or a completion reading. In (95), on the other hand, the sentence can only have a completion reading. The immediate question is why (95a) is ambiguous while (95b) is not? This is because, according to Sybesma (1999), (95) corresponds to a single underlying structure and (95a) corresponds to two underlying structures, one of which is the same as that of (95b). In his analysis, the *BA*-NP and the result denoting element together form a small clause which as a whole denotes the state that is the result of the action denoted by the main verb. As a result, by definition, there is no *BA*-sentence without a result or endpoint denoting element. The schema is presented in (96); in all schemas below, we disregard the perfective markers and base order issues are irrelevant (I will discuss them below, when we relate these structures to the tree structure introduced in chapters 1 and 2).

(96) Subj BA Obj<sub>i</sub> V [<sub>i</sub> R]

In (96), a result denoting small clause follows the verb. It consists of a predicate (“R” from “result”) and its subject (in (96) this subject is referred to as “Obj” because it is interpreted as the object of the verbal complex as a whole). As the trace indicates, the *BA*-NP moves away from the place it is generated to a position where it can be licensed (see Sybesma 1999 for details). Importantly, the R can in some cases be empty. For instance, (97) corresponds to the structure in (98).

(97) wǒ   bǎ   zhè   běn   shū   kàn   le.  
 1SG BA that CL book read PERF  
 'I read the book.'

(98) wǒ   bǎ   [zhè   běn   shū]<sub>i</sub>   kàn   [<sub>i</sub>   ∅]   le.  
 1SG BA this CL book read PERF

What's more, the sentence in (97) with the underlying structure in (98) has virtually the same meaning as (99a), based on (98), with an overt counterpart of *wán* 'done, finish':

- (99) a. wǒ      bǎ    zhè      běn    shū      kàn      wán    le.  
           1SG   BA   this      CL    book    read    done   PERF  
           'I finished reading this book.'
- b. wǒ      bǎ    [zhè    běn    shū]<sub>i</sub>    kàn      [t<sub>i</sub> wán ]  
           1SG   BA   this      CL    book    read            finish

In (99a), the result/end denoting element is expressed by the lexical form *wán* 'finish'. (99b) is the underlying structure of (99a).

An important aspect of Sybesma's (1992, 1999) analysis is that every *BA*-sentence has a non-*BA*-counterpart with a *VO* order with the same meaning and the same underlying structure. In reference to (96), what happens in these sentences is that *V* or *V+R* moves to the position occupied by *BA* in (95) (see Chapter 1 above for details). Thus, in our case, (95a) repeated here as (100) is the counterpart of (97) and (101 is the counterpart of (98).

- (100) wǒ      kàn      le      nǎ      běn      shū.  
           1SG    read    PERF    that    CL    book  
           'I read this book.' OR, 'I read at that book.'
- (101) wǒ      kàn      wán      le      nǎ      běn      shū.  
           1SG    read    finish    PERF    that    CL    book  
           'I read that (whole book).'

In the above, I have introduced Sybesma's analysis of *BA*-construction in Mandarin. The important thing for me is that, according to Sybesma, a *BA*-construction has an inherent endpoint which is expressed by a resultative element. This element may or may not be overt. Basing myself on Sybesma's analysis of *BA*-construction, we look at *ka*<sup>41</sup>.

We start with a comparison of Mandarin *BA*-sentences with the Chángshā counterparts (ignoring the perfective markers).

Mandarin:

- (102) a. wǒ bǎ zhè běn shū kàn [ t<sub>i</sub> ø ]  
 1SG BA this CL book read  
 b. wǒ bǎ zhè běn shū kàn [ t<sub>i</sub> wán ]  
 1SG BA this CL book read finish

Chángshā:

- (103) a. ŋo<sup>41</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> ko<sup>24</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup><sub>i</sub> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> [ t<sub>i</sub> ø ] \*(ka<sup>41</sup>)  
 1SG BA this CL book read  
 b. ŋo<sup>41</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> ko<sup>24</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup><sub>i</sub> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> [ t<sub>i</sub> oŋ<sup>13</sup> ] \*(ka<sup>41</sup>)  
 1SG BA this CL book read finish KA

What we see is that in Mandarin and Chángshā, the result denoting element can be overt or covert but that in the latter, whether it is covert or not, we always need an extra element,  $ka^{41}$ . This means that whatever it does, it is clear that  $ka^{41}$  does not mark the endpoint itself: as before, it only doubles it.

To further see that  $ka^{41}$  is used to double the endpoint in a  $BA$ -construction, and that its appearance has nothing to do with the perfective, we can look at sentences in which there is an endpoint, without it having been realized. In other words, sentences with  $ka^{41}$  but without  $ta^{21}$ . We saw examples in (26), here are some more:

- (104) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> i<sup>24</sup> tɛin<sup>45</sup> mən<sup>13</sup>, tɕiu<sup>21</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> xai<sup>13</sup> tsi  
 3SG as soon as enter door JIU BA shoes  
 t<sup>h</sup>o<sup>24</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>.  
 take off KA  
 'He takes off his shoes as soon as he entered the door.'  
 b. ŋo<sup>41</sup> ɛian<sup>45</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup> fu ɕi<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>.  
 1SG want BA clothes wash KA  
 'I want to wash the clothes.'  
 c. pa<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup> fu ɕi<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>!  
 BA clothes wash KA  
 'Wash the clothes!'

- d.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}$      $\text{mau}^{21}$      $\text{pa}^{41}$      $\text{i}^{33}\text{fu}$      $\text{ɕi}^{41}$      $\text{ka}^{41}$ .  
 1SG    NEG    BA    clothes wash    KA  
 'I have not washed the clothes.'

In the sentences in (104), we see that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used. (104a) has a habitual reading, (104b) describes a future situation, (104c) is an imperative construction and (104d) is a negated *BA*-sentence. All these sentences contain an endpoint. And these four sentences would be ungrammatical without *ka*<sup>41</sup>.

The data presented so far suggest that in *BA*-sentences, *ka*<sup>41</sup> does the same as what it does in the achievement and change-of-state sentences we discussed above: it doubles an endpoint that is already there. As with the other cases, the difference between Chángshā and Mandarin is that the endpoint, which is always part of a *BA*-sentence, needs to be doubled in Chángshā while that is not the case in Mandarin.

Now we can turn to the second question, namely, why *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory in *BA*-sentences in Chángshā, while that is not the case for non-*BA*-sentences?

As we saw in (102), Mandarin non-*BA*-sentences with *le* have two readings, one of which corresponds to the reading of the corresponding *BA*-sentence. The assumption was that non-*BA*-sentences with *le* are syntactically ambiguous in corresponding to two different underlying structures, one of which corresponds to the underlying structure of the corresponding *BA*-sentence. If this is correct, the same is true in Chángshā: (105a) is ambiguous while (105b) is not; (105a) has two underlying structures, one of which contains an endpoint, (105b) only has one (the one with the endpoint).

- (105) a.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}$      $\text{ɕi}^{41}$      $\text{ta}^{21}$      $\text{i}^{33}\text{fu}$ .  
 1SG    wash    PERF    clothes  
 'I washed clothes/did some clothes washing.'  
 Or: 'I washed the clothes (finished).'
- b.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}$      $\text{ɕi}^{41}$      $\text{ka}^{41}$      $\text{ta}^{21}$      $\text{i}^{33}\text{fu}$ .  
 1SG    wash    KA    PERF    clothes  
 'I washed the clothes (finished).'

Sentences with only *ta*<sup>21</sup> can possibly have two readings, one of which (the second reading) in (105a) has an underlying structure with an endpoint. (105b) only has this structure. It is given in (106) (position of *ka*<sup>41</sup> irrelevant for now; it will be discussed below). With *ka*<sup>41</sup> the sentence based on it gets a completion reading, whether it is *BA*-sentence or a non-*BA*-sentence.

- (106)    ηo<sup>41</sup> [v<sub>P</sub> v<sup>0</sup> [v<sub>P</sub> ɕi<sup>41</sup> [s<sub>C</sub> i<sup>33</sup>fu    ø]]] (ka<sup>41</sup>)  
           1SG                    wash            clothes            KA

The problem with this analysis is that it provides no answer to the question why *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory in *BA*-sentences and not in the corresponding non-*BA*-sentence with the endpoint reading. If *ka*<sup>41</sup> doubles an endpoint that is already there, why does it not obligatorily double it in non-*BA*-sentences with an endpoint? Why only in *BA*-sentences?

One possible answer to this question is that the endpoint reading in non-*BA*-sentences without *ka*<sup>41</sup> is actually an implied reading, that is, not based on a structure which involves a position for the endpoint. If this suggestion is correct, then, first, (104a) does not correspond to two different underlying structures at all, and, secondly, it strengthens the claim I would like to make that whenever there is a structural endpoint in a Chángshā sentence, it is always doubled by *ka*<sup>41</sup>. We will look at similar cases in the following section and discuss this possibility.

The conclusion we can draw from the cases we reviewed so far is that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory in cases where there already is an endpoint<sup>8</sup>.

Let's look now at the cases in which *ka*<sup>41</sup> does not seem to be obligatory.

### 3.5.4 Interpreting *ka*<sup>41</sup> in [V+bare/definite noun object] sentences

In section 1.2.6, I have shown that in Mandarin an accomplishment event with a bounded object is not necessarily telic in the sense that the endpoint can be lifted, can be cancelled. As we saw, according to Soh and Kuo (2005), whether

<sup>8</sup> At this point we have no idea what determines the variation between Mandarin and Xiāng, that is, why in the one language the end point must be doubled while it does not need to do so in the other.

an accomplishment event with a bounded object is telic or not depends on the properties of the object. In an accomplishment with an NPO (No Partial Object, e.g. *draw a circle*), it is telic, with an ALO (Allow Partial Object, e.g. *draw a picture*), it is not necessarily telic. It all depends on whether an object can be considered an instantiation of that object even if it is only partially realized; for details, see chapter 1. In this section, I discuss the status/function of ka<sup>41</sup>. I start with the interpretation of ka<sup>41</sup> in [V+bare noun object] sentences, then I move to [V+definite noun object] cases. Consider first the sentences in (107).

- (107) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> p<sup>h</sup>ao<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> pu<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG run PERF step  
           'He ran (did some running).'  
           OR: 'He did a run (he has finished (his) running,  
               a preset distance).'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> p<sup>h</sup>ao<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> pu<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG run KA PERF step  
           'He has finished (his) running.'

In (107a), ta<sup>21</sup> indicates that an action has been terminated or completed (in the case of a preset/predetermined endpoint), while in (107b), where ka<sup>41</sup> is added, only the completion reading is left: the sentence means something like 'he has done his running; he has finished running the distance he had planned to run'. What is important in understanding the sentence is that when a speaker uses ka<sup>41</sup>, there is a predetermined endpoint. For example, in (107b), the running distance may be 20 or 30 miles, but no matter what the distance is, the point is that there is such a definite distance. Without ka<sup>41</sup>, but with the completion reading, there is only such implication of a set distance.

We have two possibilities to explain the use of ka<sup>41</sup>. In one case, we can argue that ka<sup>41</sup> is used to mark or provide an endpoint (here signaling a preset distance). This is possible, since we have seen that the sentence only has a completion reading with ka<sup>41</sup> (106b), and an ambiguous reading without ka<sup>41</sup> (107a). It seems that ka<sup>41</sup> adds the endpoint for the event, and ta<sup>21</sup> is used to present the event in the perfective. However, as we have pointed out in section 3.4, this is not a sensible approach. The main consideration is constituted by

the cases reviewed in the previous section, the cases in which *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory and in which it doubles an endpoint that is already there. In these cases it clearly does not itself mark the endpoint. Hence, we give up the approach of treating *ka*<sup>41</sup> as adding an endpoint.

We take another possibility. We imagine that the reading of a predetermined or set distance is already in the event before *ka*<sup>41</sup> appears: this is in line with what we have established above, that *ka*<sup>41</sup> only appears in circumstances in which there is an endpoint, though in some cases the endpoint may be covert. *ka*<sup>41</sup> only doubles the endpoint in an event.

This is possible, given the cases mentioned above, where the object contains a definite object. We have seen the sentence in (108). We present it here again:

- (108) a. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> tɕia<sup>24</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>45</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> pin<sup>13</sup>ko<sup>21</sup>.  
           eat    PERF   that   CL   apple  
           'Tsansan ate at that apple.  
           OR: 'Tsansan ate that apple.'
- b. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> tɕia<sup>24</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>45</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> pin<sup>13</sup>ko<sup>21</sup>.  
           eat    KA    PERF   that   CL   apple  
           'Tsansan ate that apple.'

The sentence in (108a) is ambiguous: it means that Tsansan ate some of that apple or ate away at the apple and he may or may not have finished it. In other words, a verb with a definite object can be interpreted as telic, but it can also be interpreted as atelic. That is why (108a) can have two readings. What is interesting is (108b). In (108b), where *ka*<sup>41</sup> is added, the sentence must be interpreted such that the action has been completed: he ate the whole apple. The only difference between (108a) and (108b) is that (108b) contains *ka*<sup>41</sup>, while (108a) does not. Here *ka*<sup>41</sup> should not be seen as that it marks an endpoint given the above consideration: a verb with a definite object can be telic, in which case there already is an endpoint. If we argue that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is to double an endpoint, the interpretation of the action as having been completed is accounted for: since *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used to double an endpoint, we only have the sentence which had an endpoint to begin with. Put differently, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used to



- (110) tsi<sup>24</sup>lian<sup>41</sup> ti<sup>13</sup> kao<sup>33</sup> (ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup>.  
 quality raise high KA PERF  
 'The quality has been improved.'

Here are more cases in which it is clear that ka<sup>41</sup> doubles an endpoint reading in [V+definite noun object] sentences which are not in the perfective. Consider (111), with a modal verb in it.

- (111) a. ŋo<sup>41</sup> ɕian<sup>41</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ko<sup>24</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
 1SG want read this CL book  
 'I want to read in this book.'  
 'I want to read this book.'  
 b. ŋo<sup>41</sup> ɕian<sup>41</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ko<sup>24</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
 1SG want read KA this CL book  
 'I want to read this book.'

As is indicated, there are two readings in (111a), while there is only one in (111b). The only difference between the two sentences is that ka<sup>41</sup> appears in (111b). Clearly, ka<sup>41</sup> disambiguates the interpretation of the sentence in (111a) and makes the endpoint reading in the sentence the only one available (111b).

Note that in the same case in Mandarin the lexical form *wán* 'finish' must be added to the sentence to have a completion reading.

- (112) a. wǒ xiǎng kàn zhè běn shū.  
 1SG want read this CL book  
 'I want to read in this book'/'I want to read this book.'  
 b. wǒ xiǎng kàn wán zhè běn shū.  
 1SG want read finish this CL book  
 'I want to read (and finish) this book.'

There are two readings in (112a), but when we add the element *wán* 'finish' as we do in (112b), we only have one reading left. This again seems to suggest that in Chángshā ka<sup>41</sup> is the same as Mandarin *wán*, an impression that is strengthened when we realize that, more generally (not just in sentences with a

modal) the distribution of both elements is quite similar. More examples are presented in (113).

- (113) a. wǒ yóu wán le yǒng jiù huí qù  
 1SG swim FINISH PERF swim then back go  
 'I will go back after I've done my swimming.'
- b. ŋo<sup>41</sup> iou<sup>13</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> iun<sup>41</sup> tɕiu<sup>21</sup> fɛ<sup>13</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>41</sup>.  
 1SG swim KA PERF swim then back go  
 'I will go back after I have done my swimming.'
- c. ŋo<sup>41</sup> iou<sup>13</sup> oŋ<sup>13</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> iun<sup>41</sup> tɕiu<sup>21</sup> fɛ<sup>13</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>41</sup>.  
 1SG swim finish KA PERF swim then back go  
 'I will go back after I have done my swimming.'

If we look at (113a, 113b), it appears that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is like the lexical verb *wán* in Mandarin. However, this is not right. The main reason is that *ka*<sup>41</sup> can co-occur with *oŋ*<sup>13</sup> 'finish' in Chángshā, as is shown in (113c). In other words, in sentences like these, Mandarin *wán* 'done, finish' and its Chángshā counterpart *oŋ*<sup>13</sup> are lexical result denoting elements, just like comparable to *kao*<sup>33</sup> 'high' in (29b). This confirms that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is different and that it doubles the endpoint that is already there.

Before we go on to the next section and discuss the analysis of *ka*<sup>41</sup>, there is one more observation to make. To put it briefly, whenever *ka*<sup>41</sup> appears the endpoint of an event is not cancelable, not deniable. Consider (114):

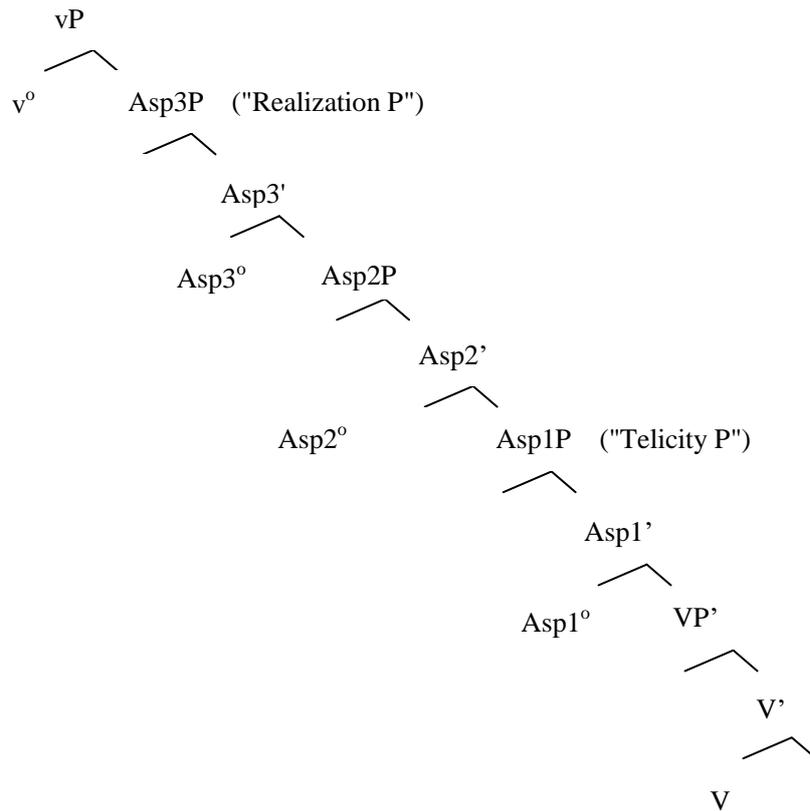
- (114) a. Li<sup>41</sup>si ɕiə<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>21</sup> fən<sup>33</sup> ɕin<sup>41</sup>, ko<sup>41</sup>shi<sup>21</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> ɕiə<sup>41</sup>  
 write PERF one CL letter, but NEG write  
 oŋ<sup>13</sup>  
 finish.  
 'Lisi wrote a letter, but he did not finish it.'
- b. \*Li<sup>41</sup>si ɕiə<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>21</sup> fən<sup>33</sup> ɕin<sup>41</sup>, ko<sup>41</sup>shi<sup>21</sup> mau<sup>21</sup>  
 write KA PERF one CL letter, but NEG  
 ɕiə<sup>41</sup> oŋ<sup>13</sup>.  
 write finish  
 Intended: 'Lisi wrote a letter, but he did not finish it.'



### 3.6 A new proposal: *ka*<sup>41</sup> as an Inner aspect marker

In this section, I provide a new proposal to account for the syntactic distribution of *ka*<sup>41</sup>. I assume the three layered inner aspect structure I introduced and discussed in the previous two chapters (see (115)), including the modification I proposed with respect to Asp2P, namely that its function depends on the nature of the head that fills it. In chapter 2, I proposed that progressive marker *ta*<sup>21</sup> occupies this position, in which case a focus on the activity itself is established. In this chapter, I propose that *ka*<sup>41</sup> can also occupy this position (returning to the function ascribed to this position by Sybesma 2017), with the opposite effect: the activity part of the event is no longer accessible for any syntactic operation.

(116)



I have shown that  $ka^{41}$  is used to double the endpoint in an event though in some cases the endpoint may be covert. The main motivation for this claim comes from the observation that in achievements, in *BA*-sentences (accomplishments) and change-of-state prediactes, which invariably involve an endpoint,  $ka^{41}$  is obligatory. We also saw that  $ka^{41}$  can also appear together with lexical result denoting elements, the kind of elements that we saw (in Chapter 1) occupy the head of TelicityP, or Asp1P.

The question is what the function of  $ka^{41}$  is. I would like to follow Sybesma's (2017) suggestion that the middle layer of his three layered Inner aspect structure for Mandarin is typically occupied by elements that are traditionally called "phase complements", elements that indicate the successful attainment of the goal of the event (Chao1968, Tai 1984); we discussed this briefly in chapter 1. Sybesma proposes that this layer, which comes on top of the layer that provides the endpoint proper (TelicityP), has the function of making the endpoint definitive. Once that layer is filled, the accomplishment (activity plus cancelable endpoint) becomes an achievement (activity plus uncancelable endpoint). The consequence of having an uncancelable endpoint is that the activity expressed by the verb which leads to the endpoint is no longer accessible for syntactic operations such as putting it in the progressive. We discussed some of these issues already in Chapter 1.

I would like to propose that Chángshā  $ka^{41}$  occupies Asp2<sup>0</sup>. It is like *dì ào* 'off' in Mandarin as introduced in Chapter 1: see (117) - (118), where the (a) sentences is in Mandarin and the (b) sentences are in Chángshā.

- (117) a. Tā bǎ diànnǎo nòng-sǐ- dì ào - le!  
           3SG BA computer do- dead- off- PERF  
           'He completely destroyed the computer!'  
       b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> ba<sup>41</sup> tiān<sup>45</sup>lao<sup>41</sup> lən<sup>21</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           3SG BA computer do dead KA PERF  
           'He completely destroyed the computer!'
- (118) a. wǒ zǎo jù bǎ kè tīng cā wán le.  
           1SG earlythen BA living room sweep finish PERF  
           'I finished cleaning the living room a long time ago.'

- b.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}$   $\text{tsao}^{41}$   $\text{t}\check{\text{c}}\text{i}\text{u}^{21}$   $\text{ba}^{41}$   $\text{k}^{\text{h}}\text{ə}^{24}$   $\text{t}\text{i}\text{n}^{33}$   $\text{ts}^{\text{h}}\text{a}^{24}$   $\text{o}\eta^{13}$   $\text{ka}^{41}$   $\text{ta}^{21}$ .  
 1SG early then BA living room sweep finish KA PERF  
 'I finished cleaning the living room a long time ago.'

As expected, with  $ka^{41}$ , accomplishments are unable to be presented in the progressive. I have shown it in (115a), more examples are presented in (119).

- (119) a.  $*\text{n}\check{\text{i}}$   $\text{z}\check{\text{a}}$   $\text{n}\text{ə}\text{ŋ}\text{-hu}$   $\check{\text{a}}\text{-di}$   $\text{ə}\text{ɔ}$   $\text{w}\check{\text{o}}\text{-de}$   $\text{di}\text{à}\text{n}\check{\text{n}}\text{ǎo}$ ! (Mandarin)  
 2SG PROG do- broken-off 1SG-SUB computer  
 b.  $*\text{l}\check{\text{i}}^{41}$   $\text{tsai}^{21}$   $\text{k}\text{o}^{24}$   $\text{n}\text{ə}\text{n}^{21}$   $\text{xuai}^{21}$   $\text{ka}^{41}$   $\eta\text{o}^{41}$   $\text{ti}$   $\text{ti}\text{ə}\text{n}^{45}$   $\text{lau}^{41}$ .  
 2SG PROG do- broken-off KA 1SG-SUB computer  
 c.  $\text{l}\check{\text{i}}^{41}$   $\text{tsai}^{21}$   $\text{k}\text{o}^{24}$   $\text{n}\text{ə}\text{n}^{21}$   $\text{xuai}^{21}$   $\eta\text{o}^{41}$   $\text{ti}$   $\text{ti}\text{ə}\text{n}^{45}$   $\text{lau}^{41}$ .  
 2SG PROG do- broken 1SG-SUB computer  
 'You are destroying my computer!' (b,c: Chángshā)

In (119b),  $ka^{41}$  is used, the sentence presented in the progressive is unacceptable, as is the case in Mandarin (119a); however, if  $ka^{41}$  is not used, the sentence is acceptable (119c).

All these sentences seem to show that Chángshā shares the property of Mandarin in the use of Asp2P. What is different is that in Chángshā, Asp2<sup>o</sup> is filled more often, while in Mandarin, in most cases, the Asp2<sup>o</sup> is empty: sentences like (119a) with  $di\text{ə}\text{ɔ}$  doubling the overt endpoint are quite rare. It seems that Chángshā has grammaticalized this function. The following examples show the difference between these two languages once again:

- (120) a.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}$   $\text{pa}^{41}$   $\text{i}^{33}$   $\text{fu}$   $\text{ɕ}\text{i}^{41}$   $*(\text{ka}^{41})$   $\text{ta}^{21}$ . (Chángshā)  
 1SG BA clothes wash KA PERF  
 'I washed the clothes.'  
 b.  $\text{xua}^{33}$   $\text{x}\check{\text{ə}}^{13}$   $*(\text{ka}^{41})$   $\text{ta}^{21}$ .  
 flower red KA PERF  
 'The flowers have become red.'  
 c.  $\text{ts}^{\text{h}}\text{ə}^{33}$   $\text{ts}\text{i}$   $\text{fan}^{33}$   $\{*(\text{ka}^{41}) \text{ta}^{21}/*\text{ka}^{41}/*\text{ta}^{21}\}$ .  
 car turn over KA PERF  
 'The car turned over.'

- (121) a. wǒ bǎ yīfu xǐ le. (Mandarin)  
 1SG BA clothes wash PERF  
 'I washed the clothes.'
- b. huā hóng le.  
 flower red PERF  
 'The flowers have become red.'
- c. chēzi fān le.  
 car turnover PERF  
 'The car turned over.'

Comparing sentences in (120) with those of (121), we can see that in the same circumstances,  $ka^{41}$  is needed in Chángshā whereas Mandarin can do without such element. The same is true for sentences with a result denoting element:  $ka^{41}$  appears in the company of a lexical result denoting element, as we have seen several times.

We have also seen examples illustrating for Chángshā as well that the effect of adding  $ka^{41}$  is that of making the endpoint such that it can no longer be stripped off.

Note that in chapter 2, I propose that  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  occupies the head of Asp2P position, without explaining why it should be there. Now I think that our answer is like this. According to Sybesma (2017), the function of Asp2P, if filled, is to make sure that the process that precedes the endpoint in the head of Asp1 is not available for further syntactic operations. However, I think that the function of Asp2P in Chángshā relies not on whether it is filled (or not), but (also) what it is filled with. It can be an element that is used to block the event from being syntactically accessible, but it can also be an element which is, on the contrary, used to indicate that an action presented is ongoing. It happens that two such elements are observed in Chángshā.  $ka^{41}$  is used to block further access to the activity preceding the lexical endpoint (for example, such event cannot be present in the progressive), while  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  in contrast focuses on the activity in question and indicates that the action presented is ongoing.

In what follows, I am going to see that the proposed analysis can provide an account for the facts that have been observed in the beginning.

### 3.7 Accounting for the facts

In the preceding sections, I investigated the interpretation and distribution of *ka*<sup>41</sup>. I found that *ka*<sup>41</sup> always appears in a telic event, though sometimes the endpoint is covert or implicit. Descriptively, *ka*<sup>41</sup> doubles the endpoint that is already there. However, the function of *ka*<sup>41</sup> is to make this endpoint more definitive and block the activity that precedes it from participating in further syntactic operations. I adopted Sybesma's (2017) three-layered Inner aspect system for Chángshā: Asp3P, Asp2P and Asp1P from bottom-up in the sentence structure. *ka*<sup>41</sup> occupies the Asp2<sup>o</sup> position. Asp3<sup>o</sup> is the lexical aspect level which is sometimes occupied by result denoting elements. Asp1P is the focus of our analysis in chapter 2, I will not repeat it here.

In what follows I show that the proposed analysis solves the problems we encountered in the beginning of the thesis. For convenience, I first repeat the relevant contexts in which *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used. I have presented these contexts in section 3.2, I will briefly go over them again here.

(122)

#### (i) *ka*<sup>41</sup> as obligatory

In achievements, BA-constructions and stative predicates

- a. without *ka*<sup>41</sup> → ungrammatical
- b. with *ka*<sup>41</sup> → completion

#### (ii) *ka*<sup>41</sup> as optional without variation of the interpretations

- A. With a quantized noun object
  - a. without *ka*<sup>41</sup> → completion
  - b. with *ka*<sup>41</sup> → completion
- B. With resultative constructions → completion
  - a. without *ka*<sup>41</sup> → completion
  - b. with *ka*<sup>41</sup> → completion

#### (iii) *ka*<sup>41</sup> as optional with variation of the interpretation of the sentences

- A. With a bare noun object
  - a. without *ka*<sup>41</sup> → termination or completion
  - b. with *ka*<sup>41</sup> → completion
- B. With a definite noun object

- a. without ka<sup>41</sup> → termination or completion
- b. with ka<sup>41</sup> → completion

In (i) ka<sup>41</sup> is obligatory. These three cases are especially interesting because these are all inherently telic: achievements and change of state cases are telic, by definition, and earlier on in this chapter, we saw that *BA*-sentences can only be formed if there is an endpoint. In (ii), in resultative constructions and accomplishments with quantized objects, ka<sup>41</sup> is optional, there is no clear difference in interpretation whether ka<sup>41</sup> is used or not. In (iii), with ka<sup>41</sup>, the event is telic, without ka<sup>41</sup>, it can be telic or it is not. We look at a few of these cases in more details here.

### 3.7.1 ka<sup>41</sup> in (i) and (ii)

We start with context (i). We have seen in section 3.2.1.3 that in accomplishments in *BA*-constructions, achievements and change-of-state predicates, ka<sup>41</sup> is obligatory. Leaving out ka<sup>41</sup> will lead to ungrammaticality. According to my analysis in section 3.5.3, *BA*-constructions in Mandarin and Chángshā are similar in the sense that they contain an endpoint. However, Chángshā is different from Mandarin in that there is always the extra element ka<sup>41</sup>, while in Mandarin there is no such element. The same is true for stative predicates and achievements in the perfective. In these three cases, ka<sup>41</sup> doubles the endpoint.

This analysis raises the question why ka<sup>41</sup> is obligatory in these contexts and not in others. For instance, in accomplishments with a bounded object or resultative structures with an overt result denoting element, ka<sup>41</sup> is optional. I repeat one sentence in (123).

- (123) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tɕia<sup>24</sup> (ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup> san<sup>33</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> pin<sup>13</sup> ko<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG eat KA PERF three CL apple  
           'He ate three apples.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> san<sup>33</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> pin<sup>13</sup>ko<sup>41</sup> tɕia<sup>24</sup> \*(ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup>.  
           3SG BA three CL apple eat KA PERF  
           'He ate three apples.'

As introduced in section 3.2.2, *ka*<sup>41</sup> in (123a) is optional, while in (123b) *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory. We have to explain the difference between (123a) and (123b) in terms of the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup>.

Before I provide an answer to this question, I repeat that *ka*<sup>41</sup> doubles the already existing endpoint and that it does so to make the endpoint definitive as defined above. With this mind, we return to the question, why *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory in achievements and *BA*-constructions and change-of-state predicates, but not in accomplishments with a bounded object, as we saw in (123).

I think that this is related to the properties of constructions in these two cases. Note that in accomplishments with a bounded object and resultatives, the endpoint is compositional; while in achievements and change-of-state predicates it is inherent. Note that, in many languages, including Mandarin and Chángshā, it is possible to present accomplishments with bounded objects or resultative constructions in the progressive (as illustrated once more in (124)), but it is impossible to present achievements and change-of-state cases in the progressive. These endpoints cannot be stripped off. When it is impossible to have the predicate without the endpoint, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory.

- (124) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup> t<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> tɕ<sup>h</sup>ən<sup>33</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu.  
           3SG PROG iron flat clothes  
           'He is ironing the clothes flat.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>ā tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup> fā<sup>24</sup> tən<sup>21</sup> t<sup>h</sup>ā ti tɕi<sup>45</sup>tɕ<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>33</sup>.  
           3SG PROG start move 3SG SUB car  
           'He is starting his car.'

The *BA*-construction is telling here. Although the endpoint is not inherent in the sense it is in achievements, in this case the presence is required structurally: without an endpoint, there is no *BA*-construction. And just like achievements, but unlike their non-*BA*-counterparts, *BA*-sentences are incompatible with the progressive. The endpoint cannot be lifted and *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory. In all other cases the endpoint, although it is there, can be lifted and *ka*<sup>41</sup> is not obligatory.

The conclusion is that a predicate cannot exist without an endpoint, either because it is inherent like in achievements, or structurally, like in *BA*-sentences, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is obligatorily present.

### 3.7.2 *ka*<sup>41</sup> in (iii)

Now, we come to the construction [V+bare/definite noun object] ((iii) above). A relevant example is repeated in (125).

- (125) a.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}$      $\text{iou}^{13}$      $\text{ta}^{21}$      $\text{iun}^{41}$ .  
           1SG    swim<sub>V</sub>    PERF    swim<sub>N</sub>  
           'I did my/a swim (preplanned stretch).'  
           'I swam.'
- b.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}$      $\text{iou}^{13}$      $\text{ka}^{41}$      $\text{ta}^{21}$      $\text{iun}^{41}$ .  
           1SG    swim<sub>V</sub>    KA        PERF    swim<sub>N</sub>  
           'I did my/a swim (preplanned stretch).'

We have established that in (125b), there is an endpoint present, which is doubled, and, in this case, made syntactically visible by *ka*<sup>41</sup>. The situation in (125) is similar to what we are familiar with in (126), examples we have also seen before, exemplifying the other type in (iii) in (122) above.

- (126) a.  $\text{tsan}^{33}\text{san}^{33}$      $\text{k}^{\text{h}}\text{an}^{45}$      $\text{ta}^{21}$      $\text{la}^{45}$      $\text{p\text{a}n}^{41}$      $\text{xy}^{33}$ .  
                           read    PERF    DEM    CL        book  
                           'Tsansan read in that book.'  
                           Or, 'Tsansan read (and finished) that book.'
- b.  $\text{tsan}^{33}\text{san}^{33}$      $\text{k}^{\text{h}}\text{an}^{45}$      $\text{ka}^{41}$      $\text{ta}^{21}$      $\text{la}^{45}$      $\text{p\text{a}n}^{41}$      $\text{xy}^{33}$ .  
                           read    KA        PERF    DEM    CL        book  
                           'Tsansan read (and finished) that book.'

In (126), the object is an NP with a demonstrative, which, as we have seen, may, but does not necessarily, lead to a telic reading, as we see in (126a). As (126a) shows, there is one reading in which there is an endpoint. In (126b), what *ka*<sup>41</sup> does here, rather than providing an endpoint, is doubling the

endpoint that is already there and making it such that it can no longer be tampered with. With *ka*<sup>41</sup> the endpoint reading is the only reading available.

The difference with (126) is that the NP in (125) is a bare noun, and a non-referential one as well, which makes it hard, or next to impossible, to get an endpoint reading without any marking at all. However, in view of the fact that bare nouns can be definite, hence bounded, making the predicate they are part of telic, it is in principle possible that there is an implicit endpoint in (125a), and that is why (125a) is ambiguous.

### 3.7.3 Ambiguous sentences with *ka*<sup>41</sup>

Now I would like to introduce the observation that certain sentences even with *ka*<sup>41</sup> are ambiguous. In an accomplishment with a definite noun object and a post verbal durative phrase, the sentence will become ambiguous. See (127) - (128).

- (127)   ŋo<sup>41</sup>   k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup>   ka<sup>41</sup>   la<sup>45</sup>   pən<sup>41</sup>   xy<sup>33</sup>   san<sup>33</sup>   ko<sup>45</sup>   ɕiau<sup>41</sup>si<sup>13</sup>.  
 ISG   read   KA   that   CL   book   three   CL   hours  
 (i) 'I read (in) that book for three hours.'  
 (ii) 'I finished the book in three hours.'

- (128)   la<sup>45</sup>   tiau<sup>24</sup>   ləu<sup>21</sup>   ɕiu<sup>33</sup>   ka<sup>41</sup>   pon<sup>45</sup>   ko<sup>41</sup>   iuə<sup>24</sup>.  
 that CL   road   pave   KA   half   CL   month  
 (i) 'That road has been paved in half a month (finished).'  
 (ii) 'That road has been paved for half a month (not finished).'

In these sentences, the action can be interpreted as having been completed in three hours; it can also be interpreted as having come to an end after three hours. The question is how to explain this ambiguity.

Knowing that *ka*<sup>41</sup> can double an endpoint that is already there, the question is what endpoints it doubles in e.g. (127) in such a way that that sentence is ambiguous. As we have pointed out before, predicates involving an object with a demonstrative in Chángshā, as it is in Mandarin, can be interpreted both as bounded and as unbounded, similar to the predicates with a

bare NP (e.g. (125)). When we add a durational modifier, we introduce a set period, and *ka*<sup>41</sup> doubles the end of this set period, thus generating the reading marked as in (127a).

When the object with the demonstrative is bound and the predicate is telic, *ka*<sup>41</sup> doubles the endpoint of the predicate, and the durational expression tells us how long it took to reach that endpoint. This leads to the interpretation marked in (127b). The same interpretation can be extended to (128).

The ambiguity confirms the claim that *ka*<sup>41</sup> doubles an endpoint that is already there.

### 3.7.4 *ka*<sup>41</sup> in negative constructions

Before I close this section, I point out that the use of *ka*<sup>41</sup> to double an endpoint is also observable in negative sentences.

- (129) a. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu.  
           NEG wash clothes  
           'Tsansan did not do clothes-washing.'  
       b. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu.  
           NEG wash KA clothes  
           'Tsansan did not wash the clothes.'

In (129a), in which *ka*<sup>41</sup> is not used, the sentence negates the occurrence of the event, not necessary the completion of the event. In (129b), where *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used, the sentence negates the completion of the action, including the end. What applied to (125) applies here: the bare nouns can be definite, thus making the predicate telic, with *ka*<sup>41</sup> doubling it.

### 3.8 Sentences in which *ka*<sup>41</sup> seems to be a marker of the perfective

We have come across sentences in the perfective with *ka*<sup>41</sup> but without *ta*<sup>21</sup>. This was the kind of sentence that inspired earlier researchers to propose that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is a perfective marker as well, which, as we argued is not the right analysis. Some examples are repeated here. (130) is the repetition of (1) in this chapter.

- (130) a. shan<sup>21</sup>u<sup>41</sup> ηo<sup>41</sup> mai<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup> tɕiu<sup>21</sup> fe<sup>13</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
 morning 1SG buy KA book then come back PERF  
 'I went back home in the morning after I bought a book.'
- b. ηo<sup>41</sup> lau<sup>21</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> xau<sup>41</sup>to<sup>33</sup> ɕiau<sup>45</sup>fa<sup>21</sup>.  
 1SG make KA many mistake  
 'I made a lot of foolish mistakes.'
- c. tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> mai<sup>41</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> san<sup>33</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xy<sup>33</sup>.  
 buy KA three CL book  
 'Tsansan bought three books.'

In (130), *ta*<sup>21</sup> is missing, *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used, and these sentences are interpreted in the perfective. Based on the analysis so far we have had, which argue that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is not a perfective marker, while *ta*<sup>21</sup> is. The immediate question is, why can *ta*<sup>21</sup> be missing in (129)? How can the perfective reading be produced? More examples can be seen in (131) - (132).

- (131) a. \*ɕiə<sup>24</sup> in<sup>13</sup> ka<sup>41</sup>.  
 snow melt KA  
 b. ɕiə<sup>24</sup> in<sup>13</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
 snow melt KA PERF  
 'Snow melted.'
- c. ɕiə<sup>24</sup> in<sup>13</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> san<sup>33</sup> t<sup>h</sup>ian<sup>33</sup>.  
 snow melt KA three days.  
 'The snow melted in three days.'
- (132) kə<sup>24</sup>rən<sup>13</sup> mən<sup>13</sup> lai<sup>13</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> pən<sup>45</sup> ko<sup>41</sup> ɕiao<sup>41</sup>si<sup>13</sup>.  
 guest PL come KA half CL hour  
 'The guests have been arriving for half an hour.'

These two sentences are presented with achievement predicates. As is in the cases in (130), *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be missing in (131c) and (132). Again the question is, why *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be missing in these sentences?

Careful observation shows that these sentences are different from those in which *ta*<sup>21</sup> cannot be missing. For instance, sentence (129a) contains two

connective actions; in (130b) - (130c), the objects are quantized; in (131) - (132), there is a durative phrase *san*<sup>33</sup> *t<sup>h</sup>ian*<sup>33</sup> 'three days', and *pon*<sup>45</sup> *ko*<sup>41</sup> *çiao*<sup>41</sup> *si*<sup>13</sup> 'half an hour' respectively. Without these elements, *ta*<sup>21</sup> cannot be missing, as we have seen in previous sections. There is always something else in the sentence in which *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be missing. This sounds familiar from the discussion in chapter 2 regarding *ta*<sub>prog</sub>, which is argued to be located in Asp2 position, a position which is too low to help a sentence to anchor to tense. To use *ta*<sub>prog</sub>, other elements are needed to help anchor the sentence to tense. It seems that the same thing happens here.

Before we can answer the story, we go back to the work by Tsai (2008). As we discussed earlier, Tsai (2008) discusses what he calls “incomplete” sentences in Mandarin. An example is given in (132) (Tsai’s (6a)):

- (133)    ??AQ    n á    le        shū.  
           AQ    take-PERF    book  
           'AQ took books.'

We saw before that Tsai (2008) explains the unacceptability by claiming that all sentences must be “tense anchored” and that one way of doing this is for the Asp to move to T. Asp-marker *le*, however, is too low to raise to T. As a result, the necessary link cannot be made and the sentence is not acceptable. Tsai presents a number of methods in which these sentences can be “repaired”. Here is an overview:

- by embedding the sentence in a bigger sentence (see (134))
- with negation (e.g., *méi ná shū*: not.have take book)
- with modals (e.g., *yīnggāi ná shū*: ought to take book)
- employing imperative/exclamative/counterfactual intonation
- using contrastive focus
- using other aspect markers (e.g., *n á-guo shū*: ‘he once took a book’; experiential aspect)
- adding a sentence final particle
- adding a temporal adverb
- with event quantification or a quantified object (see (135))

- (134) AQ n á-le shū, jiù zǒu-le.  
 AQ take-PERF book then leave-PERF  
 'AQ left after taking the book.'
- (135) a. AQ n á-le sān běn shū.  
 AQ take-PERF three CL book  
 'AQ took three books.'  
 b. AQ n á-le sān c ì shū.  
 AQ take-PERF three time book  
 'AQ took books three times.'

As we saw above, Tsai's point of departure is the "Generalized Anchoring Principle", a general mapping mechanism of spelling out the event variable in a sentence. In English, Tsai claims, the event variable is bound by tense morphology, but Chinese "employs all sorts of eventuality construals such as event quantification, event coordination, event subordination and event modification to bring out the event variable" (Tsai 2008:681).

Turning to the methods in which the sentences with *ka*<sup>41</sup> in Chángshā can be repaired, we see that exactly the same type of methods is used as in Mandarin.

In (130a), the two-consecutive actions are connected by the temporal adverb *tçiu*<sup>21</sup> 'then'. Following Tsai we say that the first sentence is anchored to tense by the reference to the second one, that is why (129a) is grammatical (giving us the false impression that *ka*<sup>41</sup> is a perfective marker).

In (130b), we see yet other cases with *ka*<sup>41</sup> and without *ta*<sup>21</sup>, with a perfective reading. These cases happen to also be similar to sentences used by Tsai, such as (135) above, involving event quantification to bring out the event variable.

In (131) and (132), the sentences are presented with achievement predicates. There is a durative phrase in each sentence. The event variables in these sentences are hence brought out in the sense of Tsai (2008).

To be brief, since *ka*<sup>41</sup> is not a perfective marker, it cannot be used alone as *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub> is. This is because *ka*<sup>41</sup> and *ta*<sup>21</sup> occupy the same position and a sentence with them but without anything in Asp3 can be saved when other material helps to strengthen T to do its job. In a few cases in which *ka*<sup>41</sup> seems to function as a

perfective marker, there are in fact elements in the sentences which are used to help anchor the sentence to tense.

### 3.9 Summary

In this chapter, I focused on the interpretation and distribution properties of  $ka^{41}$ . I first introduced two approaches to the use of  $ka^{41}$ . One of them is to treat  $ka^{41}$  as a perfective marker like  $ta^{21}$ , but different in several respects. In the other approach,  $ka^{41}$  is seen as an Extended Event Boundary marker in the general sense.

Yet, as I have shown, the previous analyses of  $ka^{41}$  are unsatisfactory. I pointed out that there are many facts that cannot be accounted for with either the perfective approach or the Extended Event Boundary marker approach.

To provide a new account for the use of  $ka^{41}$ , I reanalyzed the distribution and the semantic interpretation of  $ka^{41}$ . I pointed out that  $ka^{41}$  always appears with predicates that already have an endpoint, overt or implicit. It doubles the endpoint.

To account for the use of  $ka^{41}$  I propose that  $ka^{41}$  is located in the position Sybesma (2017) calls  $Asp2^0$ . The function of  $ka^{41}$  is to make the endpoint definitive: it can no longer be cancelled or denied. As a consequence, the activity preceding the endpoint is rendered inaccessible for syntactic operations like the progressive.

Two more things were pointed out. First, we saw that  $ka^{41}$  is obligatory in cases in which the endpoint is a necessary part of the predicate, either lexically (achievements, change-of-state cases) or structurally (BA-sentences).

Secondly,  $ka^{41}$  occupies the same position as progressive marker  $ta^{21}$ . Their effect is mutually opposite: the former blocks access to the activity preceding the endpoint, the latter focuses on it.



## Chapter 4. Evidence from Xùpǔ and Mandarin

### 4.1 Introduction

In chapter 2, we provide an analysis to account for the fact that  $ta^{21}$  in Chángshā can be used as a realization marker indicating that an event has been terminated/completed, and as a progressive marker indicating that an action is ongoing. We also point out that the durative reading of  $ta^{21}$  in a result state is derived from the perfective  $ta^{21}$ .

In this chapter, I argue that the proposed analysis of  $ta^{21}$  in chapter 2 can be further supported by the case of the imperfective in the Xiāng variety of Xùpǔ and Mandarin. I first introduce the use of  $tau^{21} \dots tsai^{24}$  in Xùpǔ. Then I argue that  $tau^{21}$  in  $tau^{21} \dots tsai^{24}$  is used not only as a progressive marker, but also as a perfective marker. The use of  $tau^{24}$  in Xùpǔ is in fact like that of  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$  and  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  in Chángshā. I further provide an analysis showing that  $tsai^{21}$  in  $tau^{21} \dots tsai^{24}$  is in fact used to anchor an event to tense.  $tsai^{21}$  is like  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ , which we have mentioned in chapter 2. Like  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  in Chángshā,  $tsai^{21}$  in Xùpǔ is one of the ways used to license the use of  $tau^{21}$  as a progressive marker. I claim that the use of  $tau^{21}$  can be seen as evidence to support our analysis of  $ta^{21}$ .

Note, however, what we are talking about is not an isolated phenomenon in Xiāng dialects. After pointing out the similar patterns in Xùpǔ and Chángshā, I move to the use of the so-called durative *zhe* in Mandarin. We have mentioned it in chapter 1 and chapter 2, however, in this chapter I am going to provide a more detailed discussion of it. I will provide an analysis to account for the multifunction of *zhe*; I am going to argue that we have two *zhes*. One is used to express the perfective meaning; another is used to express progressive meaning. However, as it is the case in Chángshā and Xùpǔ, when *zhe* is used as a progressive marker, other elements are needed. Tsai (2008) has mentioned some of them. We point out that sentence final *ne* functions just like sentence final  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  and  $tsai^{21}$  Chángshā and Xùpǔ respectively. I further point out that what is found in Xùpǔ, the existence of  $zhe_{PERF}$  and  $zhe_{PROG}$  can also be

used to support my analysis of  $ta^{21}$ . The pattern that I have found in these three languages is presented in (1) - (3).

- (1) a.  $tau^{21}_{PERF}$ ,  $tau^{21}_{PROG}$  (Xùpǔ)  
 b.  $tau^{21} \dots tsai^{24}$  ( $tau^{21}$  is a progressive marker)
- (2) a.  $zhe_{PERF}$ ,  $zhe_{PROG}$  (Mandarin)  
 b.  $zhe \dots ne$  ( $zhe$  is a progressive marker)
- (3) a.  $tau^{21}_{PERF}$ ,  $tau^{21}_{PROG}$  (Chángshā)  
 b.  $ta^{21} \dots tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  ( $ta^{21}$  is a progressive marker)

Note that in the above,  $tsai^{24}$ ,  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  and  $ne$  are per language only one of the elements which can be used to license the preceding aspect particles  $tau^{21}$ ,  $ta^{21}$  and  $zhe$  as a progressive marker.

At the end of this chapter I point out that data from historical texts can also be used to support the idea of the existence of  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$  and  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$ . Historically,  $zhe$  has developed from being an imperfective marker to be a perfective marker.  $zhe$  lost its use as a perfective marker after the sentence final *liǎo* 'finish' evolved into a perfective marker.  $ta^{21}$  is the cognate of  $zhe$ . The use of *liǎo* does not appear in Chángshā, hence the existence of  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$  and  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  can be seen as an inheritance of earlier phases of Chinese.

The organization of this chapter is as follows. There are 5 sections in this chapter. In section 4.2, I provide an analysis for  $tau^{21} \dots tsai^{41}$  in Xùpǔ, pointing out that  $tau^{21}$  can be used as a perfective marker, it can also be used as a progressive marker. Just like the case of  $ta^{21}$  in Chángshā,  $tau^{21}$  needs other elements to go with it when it is used as a progressive marker.

In section 4.3, I provide an analysis of  $zhe$  in Mandarin. I point out that  $zhe$  is also a multifunctional particle. It can be used as a perfective marker indicating that an endpoint has been realized, but it can also be used to indicate that an action is ongoing and continuous. What is different is that as a progressive marker,  $zhe$  needs to be accompanied by other material, as is the case of  $ta^{21}$  and  $tau^{21}$ . Given the observation of the use of  $zhe$ , I claim that the analysis of  $ta^{21}$  is further supported.

In section 4.4, I point out that in cases where *zhe/le* is used in Mandarin, only *ta*<sup>21</sup> is used in Chángshā, which can be shown that *ta*<sup>21</sup> plays functions of both *zhe* and *le*. In section 4.5, I show with historical texts that *zhe* has developed from being an imperfective to be a perfective. *ta*<sup>21</sup> is the cognate of *zhe*, *ta*<sup>21</sup> followed the same development. However, as just noted, unlike Mandarin, it did not develop another perfective marker. Section 4.6 is the summary.

#### 4.2 *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> in Xùpǔ

As is mentioned in chapter 1, Xùpǔ is located in the west part of Húnán province, and like Chángshā, Xùpǔ dialect belongs to Xiāng dialect family. The language of Xùpǔ has five types of aspect. They are perfective, durative, progressive, experiential, and prospective (Hè 1997). These aspectual meanings are expressed by particles or combination of particles. For example, *lia*<sup>33</sup> is used to express the perfective, preverbal *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is used to indicate that an action is ongoing, and *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is used to indicate the continuation of a result state (i.e., durative) or the ongoingness of an action (progressive). In the present chapter, I limit my attention to *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup>. I will mention the progressive marker *tsai*<sup>41</sup> and the perfective marker *lia*<sup>33</sup> whenever it is relevant to mention them.

The *tau*<sup>21</sup> *tsai*<sup>24</sup> combination is multifunctional. It can be used to indicate that an action is continuous; it can also be used to indicate that a result state stays. The language also has the preverbal *tsai*<sup>41</sup>, which is used to indicate the progressive. For the present purpose, we focus on the use of *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>24</sup>, which is illustrated in (4) - (7) (from Qú 2007).

- (4) a.  $\eta\text{o}^{41}$      $\text{lau}^{33}$      $\text{tau}^{21}$      $\text{ti}\text{ə}\text{n}^{41}\text{si}$      $\text{tsai}^{41}$ .  
           1SG    watch    TAU    TV            TSAI  
           'I am watching TV.'
- b.  $*\eta\text{o}^{41}$      $\text{lau}^{33}$      $\text{tau}^{21}$      $\text{ti}\text{ə}\text{n}^{41}\text{si}$ .  
           1SG    watch    TAU    TV  
           'Intended: I am watching TV.'

- c. \*ŋo<sup>41</sup> lao<sup>33</sup> tiən<sup>41</sup>si tsai<sup>41</sup>.  
 1SG watch TV TSAI  
 'Intended: I am watching TV.'
- (5) a. mən<sup>24</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ai<sup>33</sup> tau<sup>21</sup> (tsai<sup>41</sup>).  
 door open TAU TSAI  
 'The door is open.'  
 b. xo<sup>24</sup> tsi kon<sup>41</sup> tau<sup>21</sup> (tsai<sup>41</sup>).  
 box empty TAU TSAI  
 'The box is empty.'
- (6) a. xua<sup>33</sup> xən<sup>13</sup> tau<sup>21</sup> tsai<sup>24</sup>.  
 flower red TAU TSAI  
 'Flowers are being red.'  
 b. \*Tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> t<sup>h</sup>ən<sup>33</sup> min<sup>13</sup> tau<sup>21</sup> tsai<sup>41</sup>.  
 clever TAU TSAI  
 'Intended: Tsansan is being clever.'
- (7) a. tsan<sup>33</sup> san tɕi<sup>24</sup> tau<sup>21</sup> tsai<sup>41</sup>.  
 anxious TAU TSAI  
 'Tsansan is being anxious now.'  
 b. \*tsan<sup>33</sup> san ts<sup>h</sup>in<sup>13</sup> k<sup>h</sup>uai<sup>24</sup> tau<sup>21</sup> tsai<sup>41</sup>.  
 diligent TAU TSAI  
 'Intended: Tsansan is being dilligent.'

The combination *tau*<sup>21</sup> ... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> in (4a) indicates that the action is going on. Note that neither *tau*<sup>21</sup> nor *tsai*<sup>41</sup> can be left out. Leaving out either of them will cause ungrammaticality, see (4b, 4c). *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is optional in (5). However, its deletion will lead to a slight difference in interpretation. For example, in (5a), if the sentence-final *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is used, the sentence means that the door is open; the speaker emphasizes the present state of the door: it is open; without sentence final *tsai*<sup>41</sup>, the sentence is simply a general description of the completion of the action: someone opened it. By uttering the sentence, the speaker is only concerned with the fact that someone opened the door. (6a) shows that

stage-level<sup>9</sup> adjectives can appear with *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup>, while individual level adjectives cannot (6b). The same is true for psych-verbs. With stage-level psych-verbs, the combination is optional (7a); while for individual level psych-verbs, the combination is not acceptable.

The following questions arise based on the above observation:

- a) What is the interpretation of *tau*<sup>21</sup>?
- b) What is the relationship between *tau*<sup>21</sup> and *tsai*<sup>41</sup> when they are combined?

In previous analyses, there are two approaches to dealing with the combination *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup>. In one analysis, the two particles are argued to have different functions. Specifically, *tau*<sup>21</sup> indicates that the action presented is ongoing. *tsai*<sup>41</sup>, on the other hand indicates the continuation of the state. Furthermore, *tau*<sup>21</sup> functions at the verbal level, whereas *tsai*<sup>41</sup> scopes over the entire sentence (Qú 2007).

In the other approach, the combination of *tau*<sup>21</sup> and *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is treated as one unit, marking the progressive aspect, and indicating either an ongoing action, or a durative state (Hè 1997). When it is used to indicate an event as ongoing, it is similar to preverbal progressive marker *tsai*<sup>41</sup>. However, no detailed analysis is given. It is not clear when it can be used to indicate the duration of a state, and when it can be used to indicate an ongoing action. Furthermore, Hè (1997) does not even distinguish *tau*<sup>21</sup>...*tsai*<sup>41</sup> from *tsai*<sup>41</sup> when both are used to indicate that an action is ongoing.

However, I do not think that the use of *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> has ever been clearly explained. For example, in Hè (1997), it is unclear why the combination is necessary, since *tau*<sup>21</sup> can sometimes stand alone with *tsai*<sup>41</sup> being optional. Treating them as one unit simply neglects the difference in interpretation caused by the two. In addition, *tau*<sup>21</sup> is verb final and *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is sentence final. Given the distributional differences, we would like to understand what the relationship between *tau*<sup>21</sup> and *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is.

<sup>9</sup> I refer to the distinction between stage level predicate and stage level predicate in terms of Carson (1977b), where a stage level predicate refers to a transitory property of individuals, while an individual level predicate refers to properties of individuals that are permanent stable.

Qú (2007) encounters the same problem. If *tau*<sup>21</sup> is what he says it is, a marker of progressive aspect, it is unclear why it cannot stand alone in the same way as other verbal aspect markers. For example, the perfective marker *lia*<sup>33</sup>, or the progressive marker, preverbal *tsai*<sup>41</sup>, can stand alone in a sentence. See (8).

- (8) a. *ɕiɛ*<sup>41</sup> *lia*<sup>21</sup> *tsuo*<sup>41</sup> *ŋiɛ*<sup>41</sup>.  
do PERF homework  
'(He) did his homework.'
- b. *tsai*<sup>41</sup> *ɕiɛ*<sup>41</sup> *tsuo*<sup>41</sup> *ŋiɛ*<sup>41</sup>.  
PROG do homework  
'(He) is/was doing his homework.'

In (8a), *lia*<sup>33</sup> is a perfective marker and in (8b), *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is a progressive marker. Both particles stand alone in the sentence.

Furthermore, Qú can also not explain why *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is obligatory in some cases (4), while in some other cases, it is optional (5) - (7).

Basing myself on these observations, I think that it is unsatisfactory to treat *tau*<sup>24</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> as a progressive marker. It is also not a good idea to argue that *tau*<sup>21</sup> scopes over VP and *tsai*<sup>41</sup> scopes over the whole sentence. In what follows, I first argue that the combination *tau*<sup>24</sup>... *tsai*<sup>24</sup> should not be treated the same as preverbal *tsai*<sup>41</sup>, as is argued in Hè(1997).

#### 4.2.1 Verb final *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is different from verb preceding *tsai*<sup>41</sup>

As mentioned above, Hè(1997) does not differentiate preverbal *tsai*<sup>41</sup> from the combination *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup>. According to her, the combination is just like the preverbal progressive *tsai*<sup>41</sup> when used to express progressive meaning with dynamic verbs. In Qú (2007), however, the two are treated differently. Preverbal *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is said to mean that someone is doing something. The focus is on the ongoingness of the action; while *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup>, on the other hand, supposedly emphasizes the continuation of the action or the duration of the result state expressed by the event.



- (12) a. pɛ<sup>33</sup>tsi p<sup>h</sup>o<sup>45</sup> tau<sup>21</sup> (tsai<sup>41</sup>).  
           cup       break TAU    TSAI  
           'The cup broke.'  
       b. \*pɛ<sup>33</sup>tsi tsai<sup>41</sup> p<sup>h</sup>o<sup>45</sup>.  
           cup       PROG break

In (10), both preverbal *tsai*<sup>21</sup> and *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> are acceptable. There is some slight differences between the interpretations. In (10a), with *tsai*<sup>21</sup>, the action is presented as ongoing; in (10b), with *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup>, the sentence focuses on the continuation of the ongoing action. In (11a), *tsai*<sup>21</sup> is not acceptable, while *tsai*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is acceptable in such a sentence (11b). The same is true in (12), where *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is acceptable, while *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is not. The observation in (10) is that the predicate *ɕi*<sup>41</sup> 'wash' is an activity, while the predicate *k<sup>h</sup>ai*<sup>33</sup> 'open' in (11) is an accomplishment verb, and in (12) *p<sup>h</sup>o*<sup>45</sup> 'break' is an achievement predicate. Again, the consideration is if the two are the same, there should be no such difference. Further examples are given in (13).

- (13) a. \*xo<sup>24</sup>tsi tsai<sup>41</sup> kən<sup>33</sup>.  
           box       PROG empty  
           'Intended: the box is empty.'  
       b. xo<sup>24</sup>tsi kən<sup>33</sup> tau<sup>21</sup> tsai<sup>41</sup>.  
           box   empty TAU    TSAI  
           'The box is empty.'

The adjective *kən*<sup>33</sup> 'empty' in (13) is a stative predicate used to describe the state of the subject, it is compatible with *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup>, but not with progressive marker *tsai*<sup>41</sup>. The sentences in (13a) and (13b) show that it is not sensible to treat *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> and *tsai*<sup>41</sup> the same.

The above facts show that *tsai*<sup>41</sup> and *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> are different: the former can be used in activities, indicating an ongoing action, while the latter can be used with types of eventive predicates, indicating the duration of a result state or continuation of an ongoing action. Note that *tsai*<sup>41</sup> in the combination is only obligatory with activities; with accomplishment and achievement predicates, *tsai*<sup>41</sup> can be left out.

Based on these observations, I suggest that verb final *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is different from verb preceding *tsai*<sup>41</sup>. The preverbal *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is the cognate of *zài* in Mandarin, indicating the ongoingness of an action, the *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> combination can indicate either the ongoingness of an action in some situations or the duration of a result state in some other situations. If that is the case, the immediate question is: What is the difference between preverbal *tsai*<sup>41</sup> and *tau*<sup>21</sup>...*tsai*<sup>41</sup> when they are used to indicate an ongoing action? I would delay the answer to the question till section 4.3.2. In the following analysis, I point out that there are two *tau*<sup>21</sup>'s in the combination *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup>. One is a perfective marker and the other is a progressive marker.

#### 4.2.2 *tau*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> VS *tau*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub>

In this section, I point out that *tau*<sup>21</sup> in the combination *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> can sometimes be treated as a perfective, the reading of the duration results from the derivation of the use of *tau*<sup>21</sup> as a perfective marker. This is illustrated in (14a) - (14b).

- (14) a. ts<sup>h</sup>ɛ<sup>33</sup> tsi fan<sup>33</sup> tau<sup>21</sup>(tsai<sup>41</sup>).  
           car           turn over   TAU TSAI  
           'The car turned over.'
- b. tɛŋ<sup>33</sup> lian<sup>21</sup> tau<sup>21</sup>(tsai<sup>41</sup>).  
           light   lighten   TAU   TSAI  
           'The light is on.'

The verb *fan*<sup>33</sup> 'turn over' and *lian*<sup>21</sup> 'lighten' are achievement predicates. *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is acceptable in (14a, b). It would not be sensible to treat *tau*<sup>21</sup> in (14) as a progressive marker since the main property of achievements is that they lack property of duration.

Still, note that the sentence final *tsai*<sup>41</sup> in these two sentences can be left out. Hence the idea that *tau*<sup>21</sup>...*tsai*<sup>41</sup> is exclusively a progressive marker is questionable.

Furthermore, that *tau*<sup>21</sup> can be replaced by *lia*<sup>33</sup>, the perfective marker in some cases like (14), repeated in (15), but not in other cases can support our doubt. For comparison, (4) is repeated in (16).

(15) a. ts<sup>h</sup>ɛ<sup>33</sup> tsi fan<sup>33</sup> tau<sup>21</sup> /lia<sup>33</sup> (tsai<sup>41</sup>).  
car fall TAU /PERF TSAI

'The car turned over.'

b. tɛŋ<sup>33</sup> lian<sup>21</sup> tau<sup>21</sup> /lia<sup>33</sup> (tsai<sup>41</sup>).  
light lighten TAU /PERF TSAI.

'The light is on.'

(16) a. ŋo<sup>41</sup> lau<sup>33</sup> tau<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>41</sup> si tsai<sup>41</sup>.  
1SG watch TAU TV TSAI

'I am watching TV.'

b. \*ŋo<sup>41</sup> lau<sup>33</sup> lia<sup>33</sup> tiən<sup>41</sup> si tsai<sup>41</sup>.  
1SG watch TAU TV TSAI

'Intended: I am watching TV.'

In (15a, 15b) both *tau*<sup>21</sup> and *lia*<sup>33</sup> can be used without leading to differences in interpretation, but this is not for (16b). Note that in Xùpǔ, *lia*<sup>33</sup> can only be used as a perfective marker indicating the termination/completion of an action. As far as I know, it is the cognate of *le* in Mandarin. We therefore conclude that the *tau*<sup>21</sup> appearing in the combination *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is not always the same one. The facts presented above show that we are in fact dealing with two *tau*<sup>21</sup>s: one is a perfective marker (*tau*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub>), the other is used as a progressive marker (*tau*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub>). *tau*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> can be used with achievement or accomplishment predicates to indicate that the action presented has been accomplished. In achievements and accomplishments the combination *tau*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is used to indicate the duration of the result state. In activities, the combination *tau*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> is used to indicate the ongoingness of the actions. *tau*<sup>21</sup> in Xùpǔ is like *ta*<sup>21</sup> in Chángshā. They can be used as a perfective marker and a progressive marker as well. When they are used as a progressive marker, it must be combined with sentence final *tsai*<sup>21</sup>(*ko*<sup>24</sup>) or *tsai*<sup>41</sup>.

If the above is on the right track, I conclude that, like the case of  $ta^{21}$  in Chángshā, there are two  $tau^{21}$ s in  $tau^{21}...tsai^{41}$  combination, which happen to be the same form. One is a perfective marker; another is a progressive marker. The corresponding relation of the use of progressive and perfective aspect between Chángshā and Xùpǔ can be seen in table 1 (we neglect the preverbal  $tsai^{41}$  in the two languages).

Table 1

	Chángshā	Xùpǔ
Perfective	$ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$	$tau^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ , $lia^{33}$
Imperfective	$ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}...tsai^{41}$	$tau^{21}_{\text{PROG}}...tsai^{41}$

The table shows that the perfective marker  $tau^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  in Xùpǔ corresponds to  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and the progressive marker  $tau^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  corresponds to  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  in Chángshā. The difference, however, between the two languages is that in Xùpǔ there are two perfective markers:  $lia^{33}$  and  $tau^{2110}$ , whereas in Chángshā there is only one. That is,  $ta^{21}$ . If the proposed analysis for  $tau^{21}...tsai^{41}$  in Xùpǔ is on the right track, I think that it can be used to support my analysis of  $ta^{21}$  in Chángshā.

#### 4.2.3 Summary

In the above, I provided an analysis of the expression of the progressive aspect in Xùpǔ. I first point out that preverbal  $tsai^{41}$  and the combination  $tau^{21}...tsai^{41}$  is not the same as it is previously argued to be. The progressive marker, preverbal  $tsai^{41}$ , expresses that an action is ongoing; while the combination  $tau^{21}...tsai^{41}$  cannot only indicate that an action is ongoing, it can also indicate the continuation of a result state. I also point out that the combination is only obligatory in activities. In accomplishments and achievements,  $tsai^{41}$  is optional. I argue that  $tau^{21}$  in the combination  $tau^{21}...tsai^{41}$  can be divided into

<sup>10</sup> Note that as perfective marker,  $tau^{21}$  can only be used with activities, not with achievements and accomplishments, while the perfective marker  $lia^{33}$  is able to be used with all types of eventive predicates.

$tau^{21}_{PERF}$  and  $tau^{21}_{PROG}$  with the duration reading of result state being derived from the perfective. Based on the similarities between  $tau^{21}$  in Xùpǔ and  $ta^{21}$  in Chángshā, I conclude that the combination of  $tau^{21}... tsai^{41}$  can be used to support my analysis of  $ta^{21}$  in Chángshā. In what follows I provide facts and some historical texts from Mandarin to further support the proposed analysis.

### 4.3 *zhe* in Mandarin

In Chapter 1, we have introduced that  $z\ddot{a}$  and *zhe* are seen as two imperfective markers in Mandarin. The two are distinguished in dynamicity. Specifically,  $z\ddot{a}$  indicates ongoingness of an action. *zhe* indicates the ongoingness of an action or duration of a result state. I have also pointed out, in the spirit of Tsai (2008), that  $z\ddot{a}$  is located in an Outer aspect position and *zhe* occupies an inner aspect position. As a result (according to the principles developed in Chapters 1 and 2),  $z\ddot{a}$  can stand alone in a sentence to present an action as ongoing, this is not the case for *zhe*: when *zhe* is used, extra elements are needed to anchor the sentence to tense.

However, this is not the whole story of the use of *zhe*. In this section, I am going to provide more analysis of the distribution and interpretation of *zhe*. I am going to show that *zhe* should not be exclusively treated as an imperfective marker. We have in fact two *zhes*. One is  $zhe_{PERF}$  and the other is  $zhe_{PROG}$ . The duration reading encoded by *zhe* has derived from the use of *zhe* as a perfective marker. In this sense, what Tsai deals with is only part of the properties of *zhe*.

#### 4.3.1 $zhe_{DUR/PROG}$ or $zhe_{PERF/PROG}$

For a start, I show that the use of *zhe* can be illustrated in (17), where *zhe* indicates ongoingness of an action or the continuation of a result state.

- (17) a. tā    bù    t íng    de    shuō    zhe.  
           3SG NEG stop SUB speak ZHE  
           'He is speaking continuously.'

- b. tā qīngqīng de qiāo zhe mén.  
 3SG lightly knock DUR door  
 'He is knocking at the door quietly.'
- c. wǒ kàn zhe shū ne.  
 1SG read ZHE book SF  
 'I am reading a book.'
- d. nǐ bú yòng zhàn zhe.  
 2SG NEG necessary stand ZHE  
 'You do not have to stand.'
- e. qiáng shàng guà zhe yí fù huà  
 wall on hang ZHE one CL picture.  
 'There is a picture hanging on the wall.'

In (17a) - (17c), *zhe* indicates the ongoingness of the actions, while in (17d) - (17e), *zhe* indicates the continuation of the result state. To deal with the ambiguity between a dynamic progressive reading and a stative result state reading produced by *zhe*, three approaches have been advocated in the literature. One analysis claims that *zhe* is a stative durative marker (Li & Thompson 1981, Dai 1991, Shi 1992 among others). Yeh (1993) suggests that *zhe* is only compatible with stage-level predicates, which involves a change of state (Yeh 1993:86). Smith (1997:273) claims, "*zhe* basically presents a continuous and stable situation without regard to endpoints."

Another approach argues that *zhe* has two different meanings, indicating either the ongoingness of an action or the duration of a state resulting from the action denoted by the verb (Zhū 1982, Liú 1985, Lù 1995, 1999, Guo (1997), Chen 1999 among others.)

Lù (1999:5) suggests that *zhe* indicates either the ongoingness of an action or the duration of the result state. He points out that the use of *zhe* as a progressive marker can be further divided into two: one is to indicate the dynamic continuation as in (17a). Another is the repetition of the action, as in (17b). The meaning of the duration of states can also be further divided into two: one is to indicate the duration of a posture (see (17c)), another is to indicate the duration of the result state after an action (as in (17)).

As (17) shows, *zhe* does not only indicate the ongoingness of an action (17a) - (17c), it can also indicate the duration of the result states (17d) - (17e). Therefore, it seems to make sense to take the second approach: *zhe* is divided into *zhe*<sub>DUR</sub> and *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub>, with the former indicating the duration of a result state and the latter indicating the ongoingness of an action. Note that in Lù (1999), *zhe*<sub>DUR</sub> and *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> are only subdivision of the use of *zhe* as an imperfective marker. It is still seen as an outer aspect marker as *zài* is.

Different from the above two approaches, Tsai (2008) notices that *zhe* is different from *zài* in that *zài* can stand alone while *zhe* cannot. I have introduced Tsai (2008) in chapter 2. I repeat briefly the observation by him. Tsai (2008) observes that when *zhe* is used, the sentence needs to be licensed by extra elements, which according to him, function to anchor the sentence to tense. Examples in (18) - (19) have been introduced in chapter 2; they are repeated here for convenience (from Tsai 2008: 676). The symbol % marks "incompleteness": the argument structure is fully-fledged, yet the sentence sounds incomplete.

- (18) a. %Akiū pǎo zhe.  
           Akiū run DUR  
       b. Akiū zài pǎo.  
           Akiū PROG run  
           'Akiū was/is running.'  
       c. Akiū yǐzhí pǎo zhe .  
           Akiū continuously run DUR  
           'Akiū was/is running continuously.'
- (19) a. %Akiū kū zhe.  
           Akiū cry DUR  
       b. Akiū zài kū.  
           Akiū PROG cry  
           'Akiū was/is crying.'  
       c. Akiū kū zhe huíjiā .  
           Akiū cry DUR back come  
           'Akiū came back home crying.'

Tsai (2008) observes that *zhe* cannot stand alone in these sentences (18a) - (19a), while in the same case, *zài* can (18b) - (19b). He attributes the incompleteness of the sentences to the location of *zhe*. He suggests that *zhe* is located in what he calls a Middle aspect position inside vP (a position lower than little v, i.e., inner aspect for us), while *zài* is located in the outer aspect position. According to him, since *zhe* is located lower than vP, it is unable to move up to join T, leaving the tense of the sentence too weak to bind the event role. Hence, other elements are needed to help anchoring the sentence to tense. These elements include adverbs as shown in (17c). The sentence itself can also be embedded in a bigger sentence (as is done in (19c)). This property of *zhe* is contrastive with the progressive marker *zài* (18b) - (19b).

However, we think that the approach Tsai (2008) proposed is subject to further modification. It is true that when *zhe* is used to indicate the continuation of an ongoing action, it needs other elements to go with it, but in cases where *zhe* is used to indicate the duration of a result state, no extra elements is needed. See (20).

- (20) a. qí ángshàng guà zhe yí fù huà  
 wall on hang ZHE one CL painting  
 'On the wall hangs a painting.'
- b. qí ángshàng yǒu yí fù huà guà zhe.  
 wall on have one CL painting hang ZHE  
 'There is a painting hanging on the wall.'

In (20a), no extra elements is used, *zhe* indicates the duration of the result state. Tsai suggests that sentences like that can be seen as an existential construal. (20a) can be changed into (20b). That is why no extra elements is needed.

However, we think this can only explain sentences with locative inversion. In many other cases where *zhe* indicates result state without extra elements, the sentences cannot be interpreted as existential. See (21).

- (21) Zhangsan dā zhe màozi.  
 Zhangsan wear DUR hat  
 'Zhangsan is wearing a hat.'

*zhe* in (21) indicates the duration of the result state, it stands alone in the sentence. Note that according to Tsai (2008), we should either interpret (21) as a case of existential or we use other elements to anchor the sentence to tense. However, this is not the case.

Still there are sentences like (22) which should also not be seen as an existential case, only a definite reading is acceptable for.

- (22) m ǎn kāi zhe.  
 door open ZHE  
 'The door is open.'

So given the above consideration, we think it is better to treat the use of *zhe* in cases like (21) - (22) as a perfective marker, with the durative reading being derived from the completion of an action, as we have argued in chapter 2.

To close this section, I would like to point out that treat *zhe* as a perfective marker is not new here. Cheng (1988) points out that *zhe* indicates a state and that the action needed to reach the state is finished, that is, there is an endpoint of the state indicated by *zhe* (Cheng 1988:74). For example in (23), Lisi must have completed the action of picking up the clothes before the state of holding is reached. (23) is from Cheng (1988:74).

- (23) Lisi bǎ zāng yīfú bào zhe.  
 Lisi BA dirty clothes hug ZHE  
 'He is holding the dirty clothes.'

Similarly, Sun (1998) points out that *zhe* in (24) cannot be understood as an imperfective marker. (24) is from Sun (1998:157).

- (24) zhè ge chá nǐ hē zhe zěnmeyàng?  
 DEM CL tea, 2SG drink ZHE how  
 'You have drunk this tea, how is it?'

According to Sun (1998), in (24), one cannot possibly talk about the taste unless he/she has taken the tea. Therefore, *zhe* in (24) cannot possibly mark an

imperfective aspect. *zhe* in (24) signals perfect aspect, which indicates a present state which is the result of some past situation (Comrie (1976:56)). According to Comrie (1976), perfect manifests the present relevance of a past situation. Following Comrie, Sun suggests that *zhe* in (24) signals a current relevance, i.e. the relevance of the event of tea drinking in relation to the situation at speech time. I assume Sun is right in pointing out that *zhe* in (24) is not an imperfective marker, but I would point out that *zhe* in (24) can in fact be interpreted as a perfective marker. Since as is mentioned by Sun that only one has drunk the tea, can one talk about the taste of the tea. In this sense, *zhe* in (24) can be seen as a perfective marker.

In talking about the use of *zhe*, Smith (1997) points out that there must be a potential for change in the use of *zhe*. Verbs or verb phrases denoting relatively permanent states cannot occur with *zhe*. Yeh (1993) suggests that *zhe* is compatible with stage-level states, such as, *bēishāng* 'sad', *hàipà* 'afraid', *máng* 'busy', etc. are incompatible with individual-level states, such as *xìàng* 'to resemble', *cōngmíng*, 'smart' etc. Importantly she points out that *zhe* goes with result states and stage-level state predicates can be seen as involving a change, from, say, being not busy to being busy. Both Smith and Yeh treat *zhe* as a stative durative marker, yet I think that for these predicates with *zhe* to mean what they mean, a change must take place. It is *zhe* that expresses that this change has taken place. In this sense, *zhe* is better treated as a perfective marker.

Treating *zhe* in these verbs as a perfective marker is not impossible. One argument to support the analysis is that in these sentences both *zhe* and *le* (a perfective marker) can be used, without leading to much difference in temporal information.

- (25) a. *zhuōzi shàng fàng zhe/le běn shū.*  
 desk on put ZHE/le CL book  
 'A book is put on the desk.'
- b. *tā chuān zhe/le yí jiàn dàyī.*  
 3SG wear ZHE/le one CL clothes  
 'He put on a coat.'

- c. ménkǒu zhàn zhe/le hěnduō rén.  
 door stand ZHE/le many people  
 'Many people stood at the door.'

In (25), both *zhe* and *le* can be used. The interpretation of the sentences is basically the same.

In short, we suggest that it makes a lot of sense to treat *zhe* as a perfective marker in some situations. The duration reading of the sentence can be seen as being derived from the completion of the action: the action is completed and the result state created by the action continues. We assume that it is the property of these predicates: they do not only denote an action, but also a result state after the completion of the action. Verbs expressing *holding*, *placement*, *posturing*, and *attachment* (e.g. *hang*) etc belong to this type. Note that other verbs like *do*, *watch*, *write*, *wash*, *see*, *beat* etc. do not show this property. Since we see result states as part of the properties of these verbs, we think that it is understandable that after the completion of an action, the result state stays.

Based on the above considerations, I suggest that the preferred subclassification of *zhe* is *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub>/*zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> rather than *zhe*<sub>DUR</sub>/*zhe*<sub>PROG</sub>. Specifically, in result states, *zhe* is really a perfective marker: the durative reading of the result state is derived from the completion of the action. In other cases, it is used as a progressive marker indicating the ongoingness of an action. In what follows, I point out the differences between *le* (another perfective marker) and *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub> and that between *zài* and *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub>.

If the above analysis so far is on the right track, we suggest that there are two perfective markers in Mandarin: *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub> and *le*, and two progressive markers: *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> and *zài*. If that is the case, the immediate questions rise: what properties does *zhe* have as a perfective marker? What is the difference between *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub> and *le*? In what follows, we focus on the properties of *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub>. I have mentioned the differences between *zài* and *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> as a progressive marker. However, for the purpose of comparison, I will mention them again here.

4.3.2 *le/zhe*<sub>PERF</sub>

In this section, I suggest that as a perfective marker, *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub> is more restricted than *le*. The distinctive property of *zhe* regulates that *zhe* can only be used in verbs that have end states typically resulting from the action. Verbs that can only denote an action do not accept *zhe* as a perfective marker. We compare (26a) and (26b). *zhe* in (26a) can only be a progressive marker, while in (26b), it can either be a perfective or a progressive marker.

- (26) a. t à z ài n àr k ū zhe<sub>prog</sub>/ \*zhe<sub>perf</sub> .  
 3SG LOC there cry ZHE<sub>PROG</sub>/ ZHE<sub>PERF</sub>  
 'He is crying there.'  
 \*'He cried there.'
- b. t à z ài q i ángsh àng ti ē zhe<sub>prog</sub>/ zhe<sub>perf</sub>/le zh àopi ān.  
 3SG LOC wall attach ZHE<sub>PROG</sub>/ ZHE<sub>PERF</sub>/LE picture  
 'He is attaching pictures on the wall.'  
 'He attached pictures on the wall.'

*zhe* in (26a) can only be a progressive marker, while in (26b), it can have either a progressive reading or a perfective reading. When it is interpreted as a perfective marker, it can be replaced by *le*.

In comparison to *zhe*, *zài* is less controversial. Li and Thompson (1981:217) suggest that only activity verbs can take *zài* to indicate the progressive aspect. Following Li and Thompson, Smith (1997) claims that "*zài* presents an internal interval of a durative situation, and often has the connotations of activity associated with events" (Smith 1997:273). However, Wú (2004) points out that Smith's generalization misses an important point about *zài*: *zài* presents an event as ongoing at an instant while *zhe* presents an eventuality lasting over an interval larger than an instant (Wú 2004:320). (27) - (28) is from Wú (2004:320).

- (27) a. \*t ā zu óti ān xi àw ū w ūdi ān k àn zhe di ànsh ì  
 3SG yesterday afternoon five o'clock watch ZHE TV  
 'He was watching TV at 5:00 last afternoon.'

- b. tā zuótiān xiàwǔ wǔ diǎn zài kàn diànshì.  
 3SG yesterday afternoon five o'clock ZAI watch TV  
 'He was watching TV at 5:00 last afternoon.'

- (28) a. tā zhěng gè zǎoshàng kàn zhe diànshì  
 3SG whole CL morning watch ZHE TV  
 'He was watching TV the whole morning.'  
 b. \*tā zhěng gè zǎoshàng zài kàn diànshì  
 3SG whole CL morning ZAI watch TV  
 'He was watching TV the whole morning.'

Sentences in (27) and (28) show, *zhe* is compatible with an interval adverbial (28a), but not with an instant adverbial (27a); on the other hand, *zài* can only go with an instant adverbial (27b), but not with an interval adverbial (28b) (Wú 2004:319).

Different from the above semantic analysis, Tsai (2008) holds that *zhe* and *zài* differ in the syntactic location as is introduced in chapter 2. Note that I have distinguished *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub> from *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub>. So when I refer to distinguishing between *zhe* and *zài*, I confine myself to *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub>.

With the above analysis, and following Tsai (2008) and Wú (2004), I assume that *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> and *zài* differ not only semantically but also syntactically. Specifically, *zài* is located in outer aspect position and *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> is located lower than vP, though both are used to indicate ongoingness of an action.

In the above, we postulate that *zhe* in result states can be seen as a perfective marker, with the reading of the duration of the result state being derived from the completion of the action. Hence, we have *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub> and *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub>, rather than the *zhe*<sub>DUR</sub> and *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> we find in the literature. *Zhe*<sub>PERF</sub> is used to indicate completion, and *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> is used to indicate the ongoingness of an action. When used as a perfective marker, *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub> can only be used with those predicates that denote not only actions but also the state that typically results from the action. This is different from *le*, another perfective aspect marker, that can be used in any eventive predicates. As a progressive marker, *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> is different from preverbal *zài* in the sense that it cannot stand alone in a sentence.

When *zhe* is used to present an action as ongoing, the sentence needs to be tense anchored externally (Tsai 2008).

If so far I am on the right track, the questions I put forward in section 4.3.1 can be accounted for: *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> is located lower than vP, hence unable to help anchor the sentence to tense, that is why it cannot stand alone. *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub>, though located lower than vP, is interpreted in outer aspect position, as *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> is, it is able to help the sentence anchor to tense, hence *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub> can stand alone.

### 4.3.3 Summary

In this section, I provided an analysis on the distribution and interpretation of *zhe*. I show that *zhe* should not be exclusively treated as an imperfective marker. *zhe* in fact can be divided into *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub> and *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> with the reading of the duration of the result state produced by *zhe* being derived from the use of *zhe* as a perfective marker.

### 4.4 *ta*<sup>21</sup> and *zhe*

In this section, I will further point out that the assumed distinction between *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub> and *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> in Mandarin corresponds to *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> and *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub> in Chángshā, and what is different between the two languages is that in Mandarin both *zhe* and *le* can be used as perfective markers ((a) sentences), while in Chángshā only *ta*<sup>21</sup> does the job ((b) sentences). See (29) - (32).

- (29) a. zhuōzi shàng fàng le/zhe<sub>PERF</sub> yī běn shū.  
 desk on put PERF one CL book  
 'There is a book on the desk/ A book is placed on the desk.'
- b. tso<sup>24</sup>zi shan<sup>21</sup> fan<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>24</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup>.  
 desk on put PERF one CL book  
 'There is a book on the desk/A book is placed on the desk.'

- (30) a. *tāmēn zài n áli g ài zhe<sub>PROG</sub> /le l óuf àng.*  
 3PL LOC there build PROG /PERF building  
 'They are building buildings there/They have built buildings there.'
- b. *ta<sup>33</sup> mən tsai<sup>21</sup> la<sup>45</sup> li kai<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> fan<sup>13</sup> tsi.*  
 3PL LOC there build PERF/PROG building  
 both: 'They are building buildings there/They have built buildings there.'
- (31) a. *Zhāngsān hěn bù q íngyu àn de xǐ zhe<sub>PERF</sub> /le yī fú.*  
 very NEG willing SUB wash PROG/PERF clothes  
 both: 'Zhangsan is washing the clothes unwillingly/Zhangsan washed the clothes unwillingly.'
- b. *tsan<sup>33</sup> san<sup>33</sup> xə<sup>41</sup> pu<sup>41</sup> ts<sup>h</sup> in<sup>13</sup> iuan<sup>21</sup> ti ɕi<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup> fu<sup>21</sup>.*  
 very NEG willingly SUB wash PERF/PROG clothes  
 both: 'Zhangsan washed the clothes unwillingly/Zhangsan is washing the clothes unwillingly.'
- (32) a. *tāmēn z ài shuō zhe hu à*  
 3PL PROG speak PROG words  
 'They are talking.'
- b. *tāmēn tsài kan<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> fa<sup>21</sup>.*  
 3PL PROG speak PROG words  
 'They are talking.'

Sentences in (29) contain a *place* verb; both *zhe* and *le* are acceptable as a perfective marker; in Chángshā only *ta<sup>21</sup>* is used. In (30), the sentences are modified by a locative adverb, and in (31) they are modified by a manner adverb, we see that in Mandarin both *zhe* and *le* are acceptable in these two cases, the actions in the sentences are presented as either having been completed or ongoing. In Chángshā, however, *ta<sup>21</sup>* alone does the two jobs. In (32), only ongoing reading is available for the sentence, which is expressed by *zhe* in Mandarin, the same is true in Chángshā, where this is expressed by *ta<sup>21</sup>*.

To sum up, in the above I have shown that where *zhe<sub>PERF</sub> /le* is used in Mandarin, *ta<sup>21</sup>* is used, and where *zhe<sub>PROG</sub>* is used, *ta<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub>* is used in Chángshā. The corresponding relation between *ta<sup>21</sup>* and *zhe* is presented in Table 2.

Table 2

Dialects	Perfective	Progressive
Chángshā	ta <sup>21</sup>	ta <sup>21</sup> , tsai <sup>41</sup>
Mandarin	zhe, le	zhe, zǎ

If so far our analysis is still on the right track, we say that the use of *zhe* in Mandarin can also support the proposed analysis of *ta*<sup>21</sup> in Chángshā.

In what follows, I point out that the proposed analysis can be further supported from the historical relations between the different varieties of *zhe* in Chinese.

#### 4.5 Historical relations between *zhe* and *ta*<sup>21</sup>

In this section, I turn to the historical development of *zhe* and *ta*<sup>21</sup>, as well as the historical relationship between Chángshā and Mandarin. I will show that the proposed analysis so far can be further supported by historical relations between the two.

##### 4.5.1 The development of *zhe* in Mandarin

By examining various uses of *zhe*'s cognates in different varieties of modern Chinese and in historical texts, Sūn (1998) suggests that the imperfective *zhe* may arise from its use as a directional verb in Middle Chinese. Following Heine et al. (1991) and Bybee et al. (1994), he claims that *zhe* conforms to the cross-linguistic generalization, according to which temporal markers are frequently grammaticalized from spatial terms. Sun imagines the development of *zhe* as follows: *zhe* was initially grammaticalized into an imperfective marker in Middle Chinese from a directional verb, whereby the resultative and other aspectual meanings arose as a consequence of contextually induced semantic changes (Sūn 1998:153).

According to Sūn, the semantic change from a directional verb into an imperfective aspect marker that focuses on the result state can be explained using Mandarin. (33) is from Sūn (1998:160).

- (33) a. zǒu xià qù!  
 walk down go  
 'Walk on!'  
 b. shuō xià qù!  
 talk down go  
 'Continue to talk!'

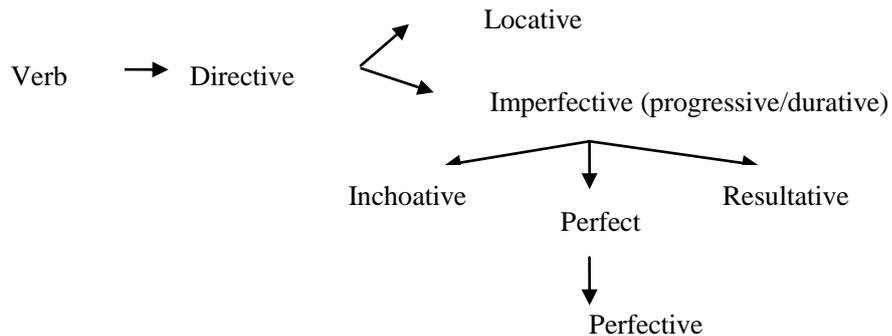
Sūn (1998) points out that the meaning of direction in (33a) *zǒu xià qù* 'walk on' is very strong. However, with verbs like *shuō* 'speak' in (33b), the meaning of direction has become much weaker, and more metaphorical. Sūn (1998) suggests that the meaning of the directional *xià qù* 'go down' has changed so that the emphasis is no longer on the direction.

Sūn points out that, "although *zhe*'s perfect-aspect function in Mandarin is limited to expressions such as the one in (24), in other modern Chinese dialects, *zhe*'s cognates are commonly used as perfective markers (Sun 1998:157) (we interpret it a perfective marker, as mentioned above). For instance he says that *ta*<sup>21</sup> in (34) marks perfective aspect.

- (34) ta<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tian<sup>45</sup> xua<sup>21</sup> tçiu<sup>21</sup> xui<sup>13</sup> k<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>45</sup>.  
 make PERF phone then return  
 'I will return after I have made the phone-call.'

Sūn (1998:157) holds that the cognates of *zhe* used as a perfective marker can be observed from other dialects like Xiāng, Mǐn and Wú, as well as from the historical texts of middle Chinese. The history of the grammaticalisation of *zhe* is illustrated in (35). (35) is from (Sūn 1988: 171).

(35)



(35) shows that *zhe* evolved into a perfective marker from a lexical verb, during the path of development, it has undergone the change from a lexical verb to a directional verb, then it was used to indicate location or imperfective aspect before it is used as perfective.

#### 4.5.2 The development of *ta*<sup>21</sup>

Sūn (1998) claims that *ta*<sup>21</sup> is one of the cognates of *zhe*. According to him, *ta*<sup>21</sup> in Xiāng can mark both the perfective and the perfect. We have seen (34), (36) from Sūn (1998:157) is for further illustration.

(36) tɕia<sup>24</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> fan<sup>21</sup> ta<sup>21</sup>.  
 eat PERF meal SFP  
 '(Someone) has eaten.'

Sūn (1998:157) holds that "... the meaning of *ta*<sup>21</sup> as a perfective comes from the perfect aspect which, in turn, might derive from the post verbal directive/locative in Middle Chinese". According to Sūn, *ta*<sup>21</sup> in (36) probably comes from *zhe* and is most appropriately translated into modern Mandarin by a directional *xi àl āi* 'go down'. Hence, (37a) can be translated into *zu ò xi àl āi* 'sit down to eat'.

- (37) a. tsuo<sup>21</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tɕ<sup>h</sup>ia<sup>24</sup>.  
 sit TA eat  
 'Sit down to eat.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> liu<sup>13</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tɕi<sup>41</sup> k<sup>h</sup>uai<sup>41</sup> tɕian<sup>13</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup> ko<sup>24</sup>li.  
 3SG leave TA several CL money LOC here  
 'He left several dollars here.'

In Sūn (1998), *ta*<sup>21</sup> in (37b) is equivalent to *ta*<sup>21</sup> in (37a), with the same directional meaning. Sūn holds that the grammaticalization process of *zhe* and its cognates in Chángshā in Middle Chinese is characterized as in (38) (Sūn 1988: 169). Sūn (1998) also discusses languages such as Mǐn and Wú, which I do not consider further here.

(38)

	MC ( <i>zhe</i> )	Changsha ( <i>ta</i> <sup>21</sup> )
Locative	(+)	-
Directive	+	+
Progressive	+	-
Imperfective	+	+
Inchoative	(+)	+
Perfect <sup>11</sup>	(+)	+
Perfective	(+)	+

Looking at (38), *ta*<sup>21</sup> in Chángshā seems to have undergone almost the same process as *zhe* in Mandarin, with two notable exceptions: the progressive and the locative. However, I point out that Sūn's description of *ta*<sup>21</sup> is not comprehensive, because *ta*<sup>21</sup> in Chángshā can be used as a locative and a progressive marker. This observation is also made by Cuī (1997), Wū (1999), Lǐ (1991), Lú (2007). See (39) - (40).

<sup>11</sup> Sun treats *zhe* as a perfect marker in sentences like (24), though I would say it can be seen as a perfective marker.

- (39) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tɕu<sup>21</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> Shang<sup>21</sup>hai<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG live LOC Shanghai  
           'He lives in Shanghai.'
- b. \*t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tɕu<sup>21</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup> Shang<sup>21</sup>hai<sup>41</sup>.  
           3SG live TA LOC Shanghai
- (40) ŋo<sup>41</sup>mən<sup>13</sup> tsən<sup>41</sup> kan<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> xua<sup>21</sup>.  
           1PL right speak PROG words  
           'We are talking.'

*ta*<sup>21</sup> is used as a locative in (39), and *ta*<sup>21</sup> and the locative *tsai*<sup>21</sup> cannot co-occur (39b). In (40), *ta*<sup>21</sup> can be seen as a progressive or a durative marker in Cuī (1997), Wǔ (1999), Lǐ (1991), Lú (2007), although strictly speaking, I would argue that it is a progressive marker.

Before I close this section, I would mention another approach dealing with the historical development of *ta*<sup>21</sup>, which is given by Wǔ (1999). Wǔ is different from Sūn (1998). Wǔ suggests that *ta*<sup>21</sup> originates from *tɛ*<sup>24</sup> 'to obtain; to gain'. Wǔ's analysis goes as follows. Before the occurrence of *le* in Chinese, *tɕia*<sup>33</sup> 'to lead, to send away' or *tɕ<sup>h</sup>ye*<sup>41</sup> 'to take away' and *tɛ*<sup>24</sup> 'to obtain, to gain' are contrastive markers used during the Song and Yuan Dynasties as aspectual markers. Later, as the use of the two aspect markers *le* and *zhe* increased, *tɕia*<sup>33</sup> 'to lead; to send away'/'tɕ<sup>h</sup>ye<sup>41</sup> 'to take away' vs *tɛ*<sup>24</sup> 'to obtain, to gain' gradually fell out of use in modern Chinese, and have not been used since the eighteenth century. Later, a verb *liǎu* 'to finish' developed into an aspectual marker and replaced most of the aspectual markers in modern Chinese. This is also the case in Mandarin. In Chángshā, however, the contrast has not only been retained but expanded (Wǔ 1999:215). Specifically, *ka*<sup>41</sup> discussed in chapter 3 developed from *tɕ<sup>h</sup>ye*<sup>41</sup> 'to take away' and *ta*<sup>21</sup> derived from the word *tɛ*<sup>24</sup> 'to obtain, to gain' (Wǔ 1999:215). To put differently, the development path of *liǎu* 'to finish' from a verb to an aspectual marker does not occur in Xiāng. She suggests that "in Xiāng, although a few localities have adapted *le/liǎu* as an aspectual marker, it can be treated as a result of borrowing rather than of an internal development" (Wǔ 1999:225).

In the present thesis, however, I assume the analysis of the grammaticalisation of *zhe* in Mandarin and the relation between *zhe* and *ta*<sup>21</sup> made by Sūn (1998). First, the analysis Sūn proposes for *zhe* finds support in dialects such as Xiāng, Wú, and Southern Mǐn and in historical texts.

Second, Sūn's analysis is based on a cross-linguistic phenomenon: there is a close semantic affinity between the locative and the progressive meanings. For instance, Heine et al. (1991:36) observe that in Dutch the locative preposition *aan* is used as a progressive marker.

- (41) Ik ben aan het eten.  
 1SG am at the eat  
 'I am eating.'

Finally, the most important argument is that the proposed analysis provides an insightful account of the aspectual overlap expressed by *zhe* in Mandarin and *ta*<sup>21</sup> in Chángshā. By contrast, if *ta*<sup>21</sup> is what Wǔ (1999) supposes to be, it would be hard to explain its function as a perfective, an imperfective and a locative as well, since these functions do not seem to be directly related to one another. In fact, Wǔ (1999) provides no discussion of the multiple functions of *ta*<sup>21</sup>.

Based on the above considerations, I follow Sūn's analysis and assume that *ta*<sup>21</sup> is the cognate of *zhe*, which has gone through a grammatical transformation from a directive to an imperfective and perfective. What we see in Chángshā is in fact the relics of *zhe* in the process of the grammaticalization. This makes sense, since as I pointed out early in this thesis, Chángshā is known for inheriting some properties from Middle Chinese.

#### 4.6 Summary

In Section 4.5, I present the historical development of imperfective aspects in Mandarin and Chángshā and the historical relationship between the two languages. Following Sūn (1998), I point out that *zhe* may arise from its use as a directional verb before it becomes an imperfective marker. However, different from Sūn, I point out that *zhe* can also be a perfective marker, mainly

used in result states and relevant predicates. I also point out, following Sun, that  $ta^{21}$  is one of the cognates of *zhe*. My analysis shows that the  $zhe_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $zhe_{\text{PROG}}$  that I recognize correspond to  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ . However, Chángshā differs from Mandarin in that *le* does not appear in this language (also see also Wu 1999). Hence,  $ta^{21}$  alone does the work that is performed by *le* and *zhe* in Mandarin.

#### 4.7 Summary of chapter 4

In this chapter, I first provide an analysis of the imperfective aspect in Xùpǔ and Mandarin. Different from the traditional analysis, where  $tau^{21} \dots tsai^{41}$  is seen as a durative marker, I point out that  $tau^{21}$  in the combination should be divided into two:  $tau^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $tau^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ .  $tau^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  can stand alone to indicate that an event has been completed, while  $tau^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  cannot. When  $tau^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is used, the sentence needs to be combined with  $tsai^{41}$ , which is like sentence final  $tsai^{41}ko^{24}$  in Chángshā. The use of  $tau^{21}$  is like what we have seen in the use of  $ta^{21}$  in Chángshā, where we argue that  $ta^{21}$  can be classified into  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ . Similarly, we can do this for  $tau^{21}$ :  $tau^{21}$  can be classified into  $tau^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $tau^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ . We also pointed out that the proposed analysis of Xùpǔ and Chángshā can be extended to the use of *zhe* in Mandarin. We suggest that there also exists the distinction between  $zhe_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $zhe_{\text{PROG}}$ . Similarly, as a perfective marker,  $zhe_{\text{PERF}}$  is restricted to predicates that denote not only an action but also the result state after the action. When  $zhe_{\text{PROG}}$  is used as a progressive marker, the sentence needs external licensing, just as  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  as we discussed in chapter 2. For a brief summary, the particles expressing the perfective and progressive in the three languages are presented in Table 3 (we neglect the preverbal  $tsai^{41}/z.äi$  in the three languages).  $\alpha$  represents those elements which need to be used to anchor the sentence in tense syntactically. For instance, it can be  $tsai^{41}(ko^{24})$  in Chángshā and Xùpǔ.

Table 3

Aspect	Chángshā	Xùpǔ	Mandarin
Perfective	$ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$	$tau^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ , $lia^{33}$	$zhe_{\text{PERF}}$ , $le$
Progressive	$ta^{21}_{\text{PROG... } \alpha}$	$tau^{21}_{\text{PROG... } \alpha}$	$zhe_{\text{PROG... } \alpha}$

Table 3 shows that Chángshā differs from Xùpǔ and Mandarin in the sense that the perfective and the imperfective are expressed by the same form,  $ta^{21}$ ; while in the other two languages the two meanings are expressed by distinctive markers: in Xùpǔ, the perfective is expressed by  $lia^{33}$  or  $tau^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ , and in Mandarin, the perfective is expressed by  $le$  or  $zhe_{\text{PERF}}$ . The corresponding particle of  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is  $tau^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  and  $zhe_{\text{PROG}}$  respectively.

## Chapter 5. Conclusion

In this chapter, I review some of the crucial claims made in this thesis. In this work I mainly discuss the morpho-syntax of aspect in Chángshā, one of the Xiāng varieties. I pointed out two important properties of aspect in Xiāng: one is that the aspectual particles are often combined; the other is that one particle is used to express more than one aspectual meaning. I focused on the distribution and interpretation of two particles used in the Chángshā dialect:  $ka^{41}$  and  $ta^{21}$ , and the fact that they often occur in combination  $ka^{41} \dots ta^{21}$ .

There are 4 sections in this chapter. In section 5.1, I review the theoretical frames that are used in my analysis. In section 5.2, I review the variation of the interpretation of  $ta^{21}$  in different contexts and the analysis I have proposed to account for the multifunction of  $ta^{21}$ . In section 5.3, I review the distribution and interpretation of  $ka^{41}$  and the proposed analysis for the use of  $ka^{41}$  and the  $ka^{41} \dots ta^{21}$  combination. In section 5.4, I review the analysis of  $tau^{21} \dots tsai^{24}$  in Xùpǔ, *zhe* in Mandarin and the relation between *zhe* and  $ta^{21}$ . In section 5.5, as a concluding thought, I discuss the relevance of the current proposal for aspect in Mandarin and topics for further research.

### 5.1 Tense and Aspect in Mandarin

In the present thesis, I assume that Mandarin is a tensed language as is proposed in Sybesma (2003, 2007). The value of tense needs to be specified through other elements, which can be temporal phrases, aspectual particles or other elements.

In Mandarin, different aspectual meanings are marked by different markers. Both outer aspect and inner aspect are structurally encoded. Following Sybesma (2017), I assume that one of the distinguishing properties of outer aspect in Mandarin is that the perfective aspect is located in Inner aspect position but interpreted in Outer aspect position. Another important feature of Inner aspect in Mandarin is that it is a three-layered structure: Asp3P, Asp2P and Asp1P. The three inner aspects are syntactically lower than little *v* and higher than VP. Asp3P is called Realization P, indicating whether an event

is realized. Asp1P, the lowest one in the structure, is called TelicityP, realized by fully lexical elements.

Aspect2P, lies in between Asp1P and Asp3P. According to Sybesma (2017), the main function of Asp2, if filled, is to block the event preceding the endpoint to be accessible to further syntactic operation. Take, for instance, *di ào* 'off' in *nòng zāng diào le wǒ de yīfu* 'made my clothes dirty'. With *di ào* 'off', the event cannot be presented in the progressive; while without it, it can, as in *tā zhèng zài nòng zāng wǒ de yīfu* 'He is making my clothes dirty.' Asp2P provides a structural way to distinguish achievements from accomplishments: they are not only different in terms of durativity, dynamicity and agentivity, they also are different structurally (Sybesma 2016).

Based on Sybesma (2017) and the observations I have made in Xiāng, I assume that the function of Asp2<sup>o</sup> is not determined by whether it is filled or not, but on what it is filled with.

## 5.2 $ta^{21}$ <sub>PERF</sub>, $ta^{21}$ <sub>PROG</sub>

In chapter 2, I provided an analysis to account for the fact that one particle is used to indicate more than one aspectual meaning. Specifically,  $ta^{21}$  can be used as a perfective marker as well as as a progressive marker. The two readings vary according to the context. I observe that  $ta^{21}$  can be used as a perfective marker with any non-stative predicates without any extra conditions. In contrast, if  $ta^{21}$  is used as a progressive marker, other elements must accompany it; otherwise the sentence is ungrammatical. In order to interpret the conditions in which  $ta^{21}$  can be used as a progressive marker, I investigated the contexts in which this reading is possible. See (1a) - (1d), where different types of contexts in which  $ta^{21}$  is used as a progressive marker are presented.

- (1) a. [NEG+V+  $ta^{21}$ ]  
 b. [manner/ locative/ instrumental adverb+  $ta^{21}$ ]  
 c. [ $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ +V+  $ta^{21}$ ]  
 d. [V+  $ta^{21}$ +  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ ]

In (1a) - (1d),  $ta^{21}$  can be a progressive marker. To explain the fact that  $ta^{21}$  can be used as either a perfective or a progressive marker, I first explored the possibility that  $ta^{21}$  is a perfective marker and that the progressive and the duration reading are derived from the contexts. However, this turned out to be an impossible position. Subsequently, I argued that there are two forms of  $ta^{21}$ , with  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  indicating that an event is completed or terminated, and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  indicating that an action is ongoing or continuous. (The duration reading is derived from its use as a perfective marker: the action is completed, the result state created by the action is left there.)

To provide an account for the distribution and interpretation of  $ta^{21}$ , I introduced Sybesma (2017). In Sybesma (2017), the perfective marker *le* is located not in Outer aspect position, but in Inner aspect position, and is interpreted in Outer aspect position. In the same line of Sybesma (2017) arguing for Mandarin, I assume that  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  in Chángshā is also located in an Inner aspect position, but interpreted in Outer aspect position.

In this part of the analysis, I also adopted insights from Tsai (2008), who argues that tense anchoring is a process of licensing an event argument. Importantly, in tensed languages with tense morphology, anchoring the event argument through tense is the default, while in languages without tense morphology, the process of tense anchoring can be done through the interaction between tense and outer aspect, or other semantic ways. In Mandarin, the tense, according to Tsai (2008), is weak, hence needs to be strengthened. To anchor an event to tense, aspect elements in outer aspect can move up to join T to anchor an event to tense. Otherwise other semantic means are used. For instance, event quantification, negators, modality or other operators can be used to bind an event variable. Tsai further assumes that only elements in Outer aspect position can move up to join T to anchor a sentence to tense, others, which are lower than little *v* cannot.

Basing myself on Tsai (2008), I proposed that  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  is like *le* in Mandarin. However, as regard to its location, I am in line with Sybesma's (2017) analysis, in assuming that it is located in Asp3, in Inner aspect, but is interpreted in Outer aspect. Since it is interpreted in Outer aspect position, it is able to help the event anchor to tense. Also, I assume that  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is located in Asp2 (indicating that an event is ongoing).

Under the above assumptions, it is clear that there is a difference between  $ta^{21}$  as a perfective marker in some cases, and a progressive marker in some other cases. The difference between  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  lies in the fact that they are located in different syntactic positions.  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  is located in Asp3, with a connection to Outer aspect, from which it can help an event to anchor to tense, while  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ , is in Asp2, lower than  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ , and consequently too deeply embedded in Inner aspect, to be able to do the same, and needs other material to help out. This approach can explain why  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  can stand alone while  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  always needs other elements to accompany it.

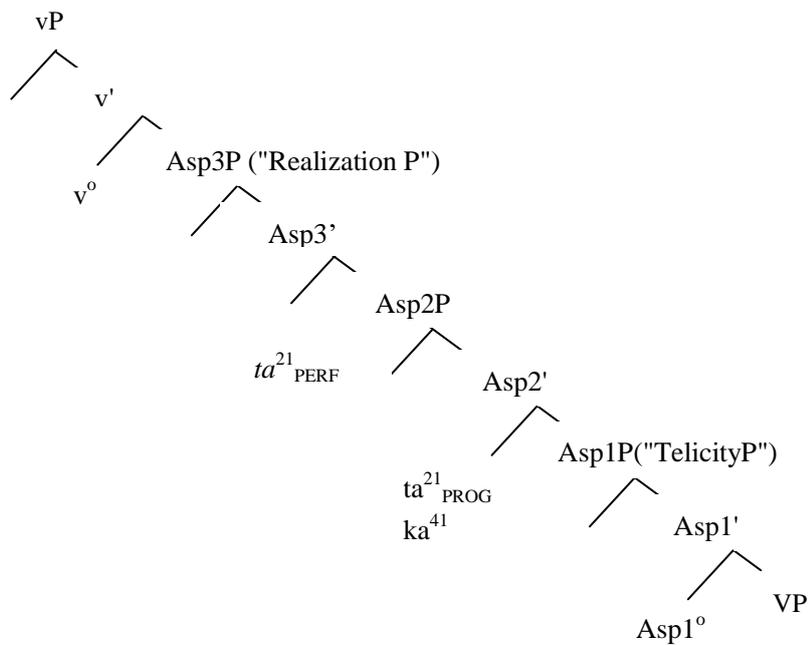
### 5.3 The distribution and interpretation of $ka^{41}$

In chapter 3, I explored the distribution and interpretation of  $ka^{41}$  in Chángshā. I first showed the different contexts in which  $ka^{41}$  is used. I showed that in some cases with an inherent endpoint,  $ka^{41}$  is obligatory. I also showed that in some other cases, the use of  $ka^{41}$  will result in variation of the interpretation of a sentence.

After that, I made a reanalysis of the interpretation of  $ka^{41}$ , pointing out that descriptively  $ka^{41}$  is used to double an endpoint in a telic event though sometimes the endpoint is implicit. To explain the use of  $ka^{41}$ , I refer to Sybesma (2017), where the inner aspect of Mandarin is a three-layered structure. The main reason is that  $ka^{41}$  shares the function that Asp2 has. For instance,  $ka^{41}$  always appear in telic events, sentences with  $ka^{41}$  cannot be put in the progressive, while without  $ka^{41}$ , this is unproblematic. Based on Sybesma (2017), I proposed that like  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ ,  $ka^{41}$  is also located in Asp2 position. The function of  $ka^{41}$  is to block the event preceding the endpoint from undergoing further syntactic operations (like the progressive).

At the end of the analysis, I presented a four-layered aspectual system in Chángshā, as shown in (2).

(2)



In (2), there are four layers of aspect: one outer aspect and three Inner aspects: Asp3P is RealizationP, indicating whether the endpoint has been reached or not. As to Asp2P, its function varies. If it is filled by  $ka^{41}$ , then the process of preceding an endpoint projected in an event is not available to participate in further syntactic operation. But if it is filled by  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$  as is mentioned in chapter 2, then, quite the opposite happens, as it then indicates that an event is ongoing. Asp1P, or Telicity P, is occupied by lexical predicative elements, denoting the endpoint of the event. This is all illustrated in (3), with  $ka^{41}$  doubling the endpoint in (3ai) and the result is definitive, with the result of blocking further syntactic operations targeting the event, as is shown in (3b). Without  $ka^{41}$  this is all exactly the other way around, as shown in (3aii) and (3c).

- (3) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> kan<sup>33</sup>tɕin<sup>21</sup> (ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG wash finish KA PERF clothes  
 (i)With *ka*: 'He has washing the clothes clean.'  
 (ii)Without *ka*: 'He has washed the clothes (not necessary cleaned/completed).'
- b. \*t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> kan<sup>33</sup>tɕin<sup>21</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG PROG wash clean KA clothes
- c. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup> ɕi<sup>41</sup> kan<sup>33</sup>tɕin<sup>21</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu<sup>41</sup>.  
 3SG PROG wash clean clothes  
 'He is washing the clothes clean.'

#### 5.4 *tau*<sup>21</sup>...*tsai*<sup>41</sup> in Xùpǔ and *zhe* in Mandarin in support of *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub> and *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub>

In chapter 4, I mainly argued that the proposed analysis of *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub> and *ta*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> in Chángshā can be further supported by three piece of evidence. They are: (i) the use of *tau*<sup>21</sup>...*tsai*<sup>41</sup> in Xùpǔ; (ii) the multifunctionality of Mandarin *zhe*; and (iii) the grammaticalization path of *zhe*. I started from the introduction of *tau*<sup>21</sup>...*tsai*<sup>41</sup>. In the previous literature, *tau*<sup>21</sup>...*tsai*<sup>41</sup> has been argued to be a progressive marker (Hè 1997, Qú 2007). Hè (1997) argues that the combination is used to indicate ongoingness of an action. There is no great difference between the preverbal *tsai*<sup>41</sup> (a progressive marker) and the *tau*<sup>21</sup>...*tsai*<sup>41</sup> combination; both are used to indicate progressive meaning. However, I notice that the combination of *tau*<sup>21</sup> and *tsai*<sup>41</sup> can only be used in activities to indicate an ongoing action, while with achievement and accomplishment predicates, the combination does not produce the meaning of ongoingness but the completion of an action. I argued that *tau*<sup>21</sup> in the combination can be divided into *tau*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> and *tau*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub>, with *tau*<sup>21</sup><sub>PERF</sub> indicating the completion of an action, and *tau*<sup>21</sup><sub>PROG</sub> indicating that an action is ongoing. I further pointed out that the multifunctionality of *tau*<sup>21</sup> can be used to support my analysis of *ta*<sup>21</sup>, which is used to express either the perfective or progressive meaning, as we just saw. The case of *tau*<sup>21</sup>...*tsai*<sup>24</sup> is like *ta*<sup>21</sup>...*tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup> in Chángshā, with *tsai*<sup>21</sup> being a present tense operator, similar to *tsai*<sup>21</sup>*ko*<sup>24</sup>.

I then introduced the multifunctional *zhe* in Mandarin. The interpretation of *zhe* is quite a controversial issue in the literature. Some argue that *zhe* is a duration marker indicating the continuation of a result state (Smith 1997, Yeh 1993, Zhū 1981 etc). Others argue that *zhe* should be divided into *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> and *zhe*<sub>DUR</sub>. However, different from the above, I suggest that *zhe* is better divided into *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> and *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub> instead of *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> and *zhe*<sub>DUR</sub>. The division of *zhe*<sub>PROG</sub> and *zhe*<sub>PERF</sub> can also be used to support my analysis of *ta*<sup>21</sup>.

At the end of this chapter, I provide some data from historical texts which show that *zhe* has evolved from an imperfective marker to a perfective marker, and the function as a perfective marker disappears, while the element *liǎo* ‘complete’ evolved into the verb final perfective marker *le*. Historically, *tau*<sup>21</sup> and *ta*<sup>21</sup> are cognates of *zhe*, what is different is that *ta*<sup>21</sup> keeps the functions as a progressive and perfective marker. It can be seen as an inheritance of earlier phases in the historical development of Chinese.

Based on the above I came to the conclusion that the cases of Mandarin *zhe* and Xùpǔ *tau*<sup>21</sup>, support my analysis of *ta*<sup>21</sup> in Chángshā.

### 5.5 Significance and further research

The proposed analysis is significant in that it provides a novel perspective to deal with the cases of combination of particles and on the one hand and the multifunctionality of individual aspect markers appearing in different types of dialects in Xiāng on the other. First, the combination of particles is quite common in other varieties of Xiāng and in the previous literature, they are treated either as one unit (e.g. *tau*<sup>21</sup>... *tsai*<sup>41</sup> in Xùpǔ), or as different particles with the same functions (e.g. *ka*<sup>41</sup>... *ta*<sup>21</sup> in Chángshā). As to the multifunctionality of aspect particles, that is generally attributed to the semantic properties of predicates: different predicates lead to a different function for one and the same particle. The present analysis shows, however, that it is more insightful to analyze these facts differently. First, the combination of aspect particles is best analyzed as involving an aspectual marker plus an additional element that is needed to help in licensing the event argument. The multifunctionality of one element is analyzed as a case of homonymy: two elements with the same form which occupy different positions in the structure,

each position associated with a different function. In this way, the present thesis will stand as a contribution to the development of the analysis of the morpho-syntax of aspect in Xiāng.

The present analysis is also significant for Inner aspect in Mandarin and other languages as well. The idea that the Inner aspect in Mandarin is a three-layered structure as established by Sybesma (2017) has provided a nice account for the differences of the predicate *wán* 'finish' between *chī wán yíge píngguǒ* 'finish an apple' and *cā wán kètīng* 'finished cleaning the living room'. More importantly, it has provided a different way to explain the difference between accomplishments and achievements. The present research is also significant in providing more evidence to support Sybesma's theory. What I have found is that in Mandarin, in most cases Asp2 position is empty, while in Xiāng it is mostly filled. See the corresponding sentences in (4).

- (4) a. Zhangsan kàn wán le nà běn shū. (Mandarin)  
 read finish PERF that CL book  
 'Zhangsan read that book(the whole book).'
- b. Tsan<sup>33</sup>san<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> oŋ<sup>13</sup> ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> la<sup>45</sup> pən<sup>41</sup> xu<sup>33</sup>.  
 read finish KA PERF that CL book  
 'Tsansan read that book (the whole book).' (Chángshā)

(4) is a resultative construction. The predicate *wán/oŋ*<sup>13</sup> 'finish' is used to indicate the endpoint of the event. What is different is that in Chángshā an extra element, *ka*<sup>41</sup>, is used.

However, there is no doubt that there are many more questions which need to be considered with respect to Aspect in Xiāng and Chinese more generally. One of these is why the development of the *liǎo* to verbal-*le* has not occurred in Chángshā. Note that it is quite common to see the cognate of *liǎo* in Xùpǔ (*liá*<sup>33</sup>) and many other Xiāng dialects. It is also not clear how *ka*<sup>41</sup> in Chángshā developed. All these questions will be the subject of our further investigation.

**References**

- Allen, Robert Livingston. 1966. *The Verb System of Present Day American English*. The Hague: Mouton.
- Arche, María J. 2006. *Individuals in Time: Tense, Aspect and the Individual/Stage Distinction*. John Benjamins Publishing Company.
- Aristotle. 1928. *Metaphysics*. In Ross, W. E. ed. *The works of Aristotle*, V. VII, 2nd ed. Oxford: Clarendon.
- Bach, Emmon. 1986. "The Algebra of Events." *Linguistics and Philosophy*. 1986: 9, 5-16.
- Bertinetto, Pier Marco 1994. "Stative, Progressive and Habitual Analogies and Differences". *Linguistics* 1994,32, 391-423.
- Bertinetto, Pier Marco and Denis, Delfitto. 2000. Aspect vs Actionality: why they should be kept apart. In *Tense and Aspect in the Languages of Europe*. Ed, Östen Dahl. Mouton de Gruyter.
- Binnick, Robert I. 1991. *Time and the Verb*. Oxford University Press, Incorporation.
- Bonami, Olivier. 2001. *A Syntax-Semantics Interface for Tense and Aspect in French*. In Dorothee Berman, Frank van Eynde, Lars Hellan (eds.) *Proceedings of the 8th International HPSG conference*. CSCI Publications.
- Borer, Hagit. 2005a. *Structuring Sense, Volume 1: In name only*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

- Borer, Hagit. 2005b. *Structuring Sense, Volume 2: The normal course of events*. Oxford University Press.
- Bybee, Joan, Perkins, Revere and Pagliuca, William. 1994. *The Evolution of Grammar: Tense, aspect, and modality in the languages of the world*. The University of Chicago Press, Chicago, Illinois.
- Carlson, Greg. 1977. *Reference to Kinds in English*. Ph.D. Dissertation. University of California. Dissertation Abstracts International 38, 6:3442A.
- Chang, Junhsing. 2003. Stative Eventualities and Aspectual Marker le in Chinese. *Taiwan Journal of Linguistic* 2003. 97-110.
- Chao, Yuen Ren. 1968. *A Grammar of Spoken Chinese*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Charles, Thompson, J. 1968. Aspects of the Chinese Verb. *Linguistics*. 1968, 38: 70-7.
- Charles, Thompson, J. 1988. *Aspect: A general System and Its Manifestation in Mandarin Chinese*. Student Book Co., Ltd.
- Chen, Yi-Hsun. 2011. *On the (Atelicity) of Verb-Adjective Compounds in Mandarin*. NCL 12.
- Cheng, Lisa. "On the interaction between modals and aspect", unpublished ms., Leiden University, 2016.
- Cheng, Lisa. 1988. "Aspects of the Ba-Construction" in C. Tenny (ed.) *Studies in Generative Approaches to Aspect, Lexicon Project Working Papers* 24, MIT. Cambridge.

- Cheng, Lisa, Huang, James & Tang, Jane. 1996. Negative Particle Questions: a Dialectal Comparison. In *Microparametric Syntax and Dialect Variation* by James R. Black and Virginia Motaanyave (eds). John Benjamins Publishing Company Amsterdam/Philadelphia.
- Chomsky, Noam. 1993. A Minimalist Program for Linguistic Theory, in K. Hale & S.J. Keyser. eds., *The view from building 20*. MIT Press, Cambridge.
- Chung, Sandra and Alan Timberlake. 1985. Tense, aspect, and mood. In *Language Typology and Syntactic Description*, ed. Timothy Shoen, volume 3. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press.
- Comrie, Bernard. 1976. *Aspect*. Cambridge University Press.
- Comrie, Bernard. 1985. *Tense*. Cambridge University Press.
- Croft, William. 1990. *Typology and Universals*. Cambridge University Press. Cambridge, England.
- Cui, Zhenhua. 1996. "YiYang FangYan de DongTaiZhuci." *Hunan FangYan de DongTai Zhuci*. Ed. by Wu Yunji, p. 232-266. Changsha: Hunan Normal University Press.
- Dahl, Östen. 1985. *Tense and Aspect Systems*, Basil Blackwell Ltd.
- Dahl, Östen. (Editor). 2000. *Tense and Aspect in the languages of Europe*. Mouton de Gruyter. Berlin. New York.
- De Swart, Hendriëte. 1998. Aspect Shift and Coercion. *Natural Language and Linguistic Theory*, 16:347-385.

- Declerck, Renaat. 1979. Aspect and the Bounded/Unbounded (Telic/Atelic) Distinction. *Linguistics*, 17.761-94.
- Diesing, Molly. 1990. Verb Movement and the Subject Position in Yiddish. *Natural language and Linguistic Theory*, 14:1-46.
- Ding, Shusheng et al. 1963. *Xiandai Hanyu Yufa Jianghua*. Shangwu Yinshuguan.
- Dowty, David. 1979. *Word Meaning and Montague Grammar*. Dordrecht: D. Reidel Publishing Company.
- Enç, Mürvet. 1987. Anchoring Conditions for Tense. *Linguistic Inquiry*, 1987, 18: 633-637.
- Filip, Hana. 1999. *Aspect, Eventuality Types and Nominal Reference*. Garland publishing, Inc. A member of Taylor & Francis Group. New York & London.
- Flouraki, Maria. 2006. *Constraining Aspectual Composition*. CSLI Publications.
- Gao, Meijia and Soh, Hooi Ling. 2004. An Aspectual Analysis of Verbal -le and Sentential -le. Manuscript, University of Minnesota.
- Glasbey, Sheila. 1998. *Progressives, States and Backgrounding*. In *Events and Grammar* Edt. Rothstein Susan. Kluwer Academic Publisher.
- Gutierrez -Rexach, Javier. 1996. Notes on the Thematic Properties of Manner and Subject -Oriented Adverbs. *International Journal of Basque Linguistics and Philology*, 1996, 605-619.

- Hale, Kenneth, and Samuel Jay Keyser. 1993. On Argument Structure and the Lexical Expression of Syntactic Relations. In *The view from building 20: Essays in Linguistics in honor of Sylvain Bromberger*, ed. Kenneth Hale and Samuel Jay Keyser. Cambridge, Massachusetts: MIT Press.
- Harwood, William. 2015. Being progressive is just a phase: celebrating the uniqueness of progressive aspect under a phrase-based analysis. *Natural Language and Linguistic Theory* 2015:2, 523-573.
- Hay, Jennifer, Kennedy, Christopher and Levin, Beth. 1999. Scalar Structure Underlies Telicity in “Degree Achievements”. In: Matthews, T., Strolovitch, D. (Eds.), *Proceedings of SALT IX*. Cornell University, Ithaca, NY, pp. 127–144.
- He, Kailin. 1999. *Xupu Fangyan Yan Jiu*. Hunan Jiao Yu Chu Ban She.
- Higginbotham, James. 1989. Elucidations of Meaning. *Linguistics and Philosophy*, 1989: 465-518.
- Higginbotham, James. 1985. On Semantics. *Linguistics and Philosophy*. 1985:547-593.
- Hoekstra, Teun. 1988. Small Clause Results. *Lingua*. 1988:101-139.
- Hopper, Paul, J and Thompson, Sandra, A. 1980. “Transitivity in Grammar and Discourse.” *Language* 1980: 251-299.
- Hu, Jianhua & Shi, Dingxu. 2005. Wan ju tiao jian yu zhi chen tezheng de yunjun. *Yu Yan Ke Xue*. 2005: 5: 42-49.
- Hu Jianhua, Haihua Pan, and Xu Liejiong. 2001. Is there a finite vs nonfinite distinction in Chinese? *Linguistics*. 2001:1117-1148.

- Huang, Mei jin. 1988. *Aspect, a General System and Its Manifestation in Mandarin*. Chinese Taiwan Student Book Co., Ltd.
- Jackendoff, Ray. 1991. Parts and Boundaries. *Cognition*, 1991,41: 9-45.
- Jing, Cheng. 1996. Hanyu de cheng ju guocheng he shijian gainian de biaoda. *Yuwen yanjiu* 1996, 1:1-5.
- Kamp, Hans & Uwe Reyle. 1993. *From Discourse to Logic*. Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic Publishers.
- Katz, Graham. 2009. "Manner Modification of State Verbs." In *Adjectives and Adverbs*.
- Kearns, Kate. 2007. Telic Senses of Deadjectival verbs. *Lingua*. 2007:117:26-66.
- Klein, Wolfgang. 1994. *Time in Language*. London: Routledge.
- Klein, Wolfgang, Li Ping, and Henriëtte Hendricks. "Aspect and Assertion in Mandarin Chinese." *Natural Language and Linguistic Theory* 18 (2000): 723–770.
- Köng, Linda, 1994. YingXiang HanYu Juzi ZiZu de YuYan XingShi. *ZhongGuo YuWen*. 1994: 434-440.
- Kratzer, Angelika. 1989. An Investigation into the Lumps of Thought. *Linguistics and Philosophy* 1989, 12; 607-653.
- Kratzer, Angelika. 1995. Stage-level and Individual –level predicates. In *The Generic Book*, Gred N. Carlson & Francis Jeffrey Pelletier (eds), 125-175. Chicago IL: University of Chicago Press.

- Krifka, Manfred. 1989. Nominal Reference, Temporal Construction and Quantification in Event Semantics. In: *Renate Bartsch, Johan van bentham, and Peter van Emde Boas* (eds.) *Semantics and Contexts Expressions*. Dordrecht: Foris.
- Krifka, Manfred. 1992. Thematic Relations as Links Between Nominal Reference and Temporal Constitution. In *Lexical Matters*. I.sag and A.Szabolsci (eds.),. Standford, CA: CSLI Publications.
- Krifka, Manfred. 1993. Focus and Presupposition in Dynamic Interpretation. *Journal of Semantics*.
- Landman, Fred. 2000. *Events and Plurality*. Kluwer Academic Publishers.
- Landman, Fred. 2008. Incremental homogeneity in the semantics of aspectual for -phrases. In *Syntax, Lexical Semantics and Event Structure* by M. Hovav, E.Doron and I Sichel (eds.) Oxford University Press.
- Lewis, David. 1975. *Adverbs of Quantification*. Formal Semantics of Natural Languages. In E. L. Keenan (ed.), *Formal Semantics*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, U.K.
- Li, Charles N. and Sandra A. Thompson. 1981. *Mandarin Chinese: A functional Reference Grammar*. University of California Press.
- Lǐ, Rongming. 1991. *Changsha Fangyan*. Changsha, Hunan Publishing House.
- Lǐ, Zongxing. 1996. HuBei Fang Yang ZhuCi “zai”de Yong Fa he Lai Yuan. *FangYang*. 1996.1.

- Lin, Jo-wang. 2003a. Selectional Restrictions of Tenses and Temporal Reference of Chinese Bare sentences. *Lingua*. 2002: 113, 271-302.
- Lin, Jo-wang. 2003c. Temporal reference in Mandarin Chinese. *Journal of East Asian Linguistics* 2003, 12:259-311.
- Lin, Jo-wang. 2006. Time in a Language Without Tense: the case of Chinese. *Journal of Semantics* 2006, 23:1-53.
- Lin, William Chin-juong. 1979. *A Descriptive Semantic Analysis of the Mandarin Aspect-Tense System*. University Microfilms International.
- Lin, Zong Hong. 2003. Event structure and the Encoding of Arguments: the Syntax of the Mandarin and English Verb. Ph.D. thesis, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.
- Link, Godehard. 1983. The Logical Analysis of Plurals and Mass terms: a Lattice-Theoretical Approach. In *Meaning Use and Interpretation* R. R. R. R. (eds), and A. Von Stechow (eds.), Berlin/New York: de Gruyter.
- Lú, Fengshi. 1997. An Aspectual Analysis of BA. *Journal of East Asian Linguistics*. 1997, 6:51-99.
- Lú, Fengshi. 2009. Aspect and the Postverbal Zai Phrase in Mandarin Chinese. In *Studies in Chinese Linguistics: Functional Approaches*, (ed.) Janet Xing, 103-129, Hong Kong: Hong Kong University Press.
- Ljungqvist, Marita. 2007. Le, Guo and Zhe in Mandarin Chinese: a relevance—theoretical account. *Journal East Asian Linguist*. 2007, 16: 193:235.

- Lú, Xiaoqun. 2007. *XiangYuYuFaYanJiu*. Zhong Yang Min Zu Da Xue Chu Ban She.
- Lǚ, Man 2010a. Wan Chen Ti YuYi yu Shi Jiang Wan Cheng—A Cross-Linguistic perspective of Perfective in Changsha. *XianDai WaiYu*. 2010, 3:230-239.
- Lǚ, Man. 2010b. Changsha FangYan ka he ta de YongFa TanJiu. *Zhong Guo Yu Wen*. 2010, 6:526-534.
- Luó, Ziqun. 2006. *XianDai HniYuFangYan CiXu BiJiao YanJiu*. ZhongYang MinZu DaXueChuBan She.
- MacDonald, Jonathan E. 2009. *The Syntactic Nature of Inner Aspect A minimalist Perspective*. John Benjamins Publishing Company.
- Matthewson, Lisa. “An underspecified Tense in St’át’imcets”, paper presented at WECOL 2002.
- McConnell-Ginet, Sally. 1982. Adverbs and Logical form. *Language*. 1982, 58:144-184.
- Mǎ, Tsu-Lin. 1988. “HanYu fangyan li Xuci “zhe”xi san zhong yongfa de lai yuan [The origin of the three uses of the Mandarin functions-word “zhe” in Mandain dialects]. *Zhongguo yuyan xuebao* 1988, 3: 191-206.
- Mei, Tsu-Lin. 1994. “TangDai, SongDai GongTong Yu de YuFa he XianDai FangYan de YuFa ” [The grammar,of Tang-Song koine and the grammar of modern Chinese dialect], in Paul jen-Kuei Li, Chu Ren Huang, and Chih- chen Jane Tang (eds.), *Chinese Languages and Linguistics II*:

- Historical linguistics, Symposium Series of the Institute of History and Philology, Academia Sinica, Taipei.
- Milsark, Gary. 1977. Toward an explanation of certain peculiarities in the existential construction in English. *Linguistic Analysis*. 1977, 3: 1-30.
- Moens, Marc, and Mark Steedman. 1988. Temporal Ontology and Temporal Reference. *Computational Linguistics*. 1988, 14:15-28.
- Nikolaeva, Irina, ed. 2007. *Finiteness. Theoretical and empirical foundations*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Olsen, Mari Broman. 1997. *A Semantic and Pragmatic Model of Lexical and Grammatical Aspect*. New York: Garland Publishing, Incorporation.
- Parsons, Terence. 1990. *Events in the Semantics of English*. Cambridge, Mass: MIT Press.
- Partee, Barbara H., Bach, E and Kratzer, A. 1987. Quantification: a Cross-Linguistic Perspective. Unpublished ms. (National Science Foundation proposal), University of Massachusetts, Amherst, Mass.
- Piñón, Christopher. 2009. *Agent-oriented adverbs as manner adverbs*. Ereignissemantik-Workshop, Humboldt-Universität.
- Pustejovsky, James. 1991. The Syntax of Event Structure. *Cognition*. 1991: 41:47-81.
- Pustejovsky, James. 1995. *The Generative Lexicon*. Cambridge MA: the MIT Press.
- Qú, Jianhui. 2007. Hunan Luxi Fangyan de Zhuci 'tsai'. *Yu Wen Yan Jiu*. 2007. 2:53-56.

- Quirk, Randolph, Greenbaum, Sidney, Leech, Geoffrey, and Svartvik, Jan .  
1985. *A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language*. Longman.  
London.
- Ramchand, Gillian Catriona. 1997. *Aspect and Prediction*. Clarendon Press  
Oxford.
- Reichenbach, Hans. 1947. *Elements of Symbolic Logic*. London: Macmillan.
- Ross, Claudia. 1995. Temporal and Aspectual Reference in Mandarin Chinese.  
*Journal of Chinese Linguistics*. 1995, 23: 87-135.
- Ross, John Robert. 1967. Constraints on Variables in Syntax. MIT ph.D.  
Dissertation. Rothstein, Susan. 1999. Fine-Grained Structure in the  
Eventuality Domain: the Semantics of Predicative Adjective Phrases and  
Be. *Natural Language Semantics*. 1999, 37-420.
- Rothstein, Susan. 2004. *Structuring Event*. Blackwell Publishing.
- Ryle, Gilbert. 1949. *The Concept of Mind*. London: Barnes and Noble.
- Shěn, Jiaxuan. 1995. "You Jie" yu "Wu Jie". *Zhongguo Yuwen*. 1995,  
6:367-380.
- Shi, Yu Zhi. 2006. Lun Han Yu de Jing Xing Ti Fan Chou. *HanYu XueXi*. 2006,  
1: 14-24.
- Shu, C,-H., 2003. Aspectual and Morpho-syntactic Status of -Zhe, MA thesis.  
National Tsing Hua University.
- Singh, Mona. 1991. The Perfect Paradox. *Proceedings of the Berkeley  
Linguistics Society*. Berkeley: Department of Linguistics, University of  
California.

- Smith, Carlota S. 1997. *The Parameter of Aspect*. Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic Publishers.
- Soh, Hooi Ling and Kuo, Jenny Yi-chun. 2005. Perfective Aspect and Accomplishment Situations in Mandarin Chinese. *Perspectives on Aspect*, ed. by Angeliek van Hout, Henriette de Swart and Henk Verkuyl. Dordrecht: Springer, 2005: 199-216.
- Soh, Hooi Ling and Gao, Meijia. 2007. It's over: Verbal -le in Mandarin Chinese. In *The Grammar-Pragmatics Interface: essays in honor of Jeanette K. Gundel*, eds. Nancy Hedberg and Ron Zacharski, 91-109. Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- Stowell, Tim. 1993. Syntax of Tense. Ms., University of California, Los Angeles.
- Stowell, Tim. 1996. The Phrase Structure of Tense. In *Phrase structure and the Lexicon*, J. Rooryck and L. Zaring (eds.) 277-291. Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Sybesma, Rint. 1992. Causative and Accomplishments: The case of Chinese. Ba. Ph.D. Dissertation. Leiden University.
- Sybesma, Rint. 1999. *The Mandarin VP*. Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic Publisher.
- Sybesma, Rint. 2004 Exploring Cantonese Tense. In *Linguistics in The Netherlands*. Edited by Leonie Cornipw qne Jenny Doetjes, 169-180. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Sybesma, Rint. 2011. Layers in the Verb Phrase. Conference paper presented in EACL 7 Venice 2011.

- Sybesma, Rint 2017. "Aspect, Inner." Encyclopedia of Chinese language and linguistics, ed. Rint Sybesma, Wolfgang Behr, Yueguo Gu, Zev Handel, C.-T. James Huang and James Myers (eds.), Encyclopedia of Chinese language and linguistics, Leiden: Brill, Vol I, 186-193.
- Tai, James. 1984. "Verbs and Times in Chinese: Vendler's Four categories," in D. Testen et al. (eds.), *Lexical semantics*, Chicago Linguistic Society, Chiacago, 1984: 288-296.
- Talmy, Leonard. 1985. Lexicalization Patterns. *Language Typology and Syntactic Description*. Edited by Timothy Shopen. Cambridge.
- Talmy, Leonard. 1988. The Relation of Grammar to Cognition. *Topics in Cognitive Linguistics*, ed. by Brygida Rudzka-Ostyn, 165–205, John Benjamins, Amsterdam.
- Tang, Sze-Wing & Thomas Hun-Tak Lee. 2000. Focus as an Anchoring Condition. Paper Presented at the International Symposium on Topic and Focus in Chinese. The Hong Kong Polytechnic University.
- Tenny, Carol L. 2000. "Core events and Adverbial Modification." In *Events as Grammatical Objects* Edt. by Carol Tenny and James Pustejovsky. CSLI Publications, Stanford, California, PP. 285-334.
- Travis, Lisa 1984. Parameters and Effects of Word Order Variation. PhD Dissertation. MIT.
- Travis, Lisa. 1988. The Syntas of Adverbs. McGill Working Papers in Linguistics: Special Issue on Comparative Germanic Syntax. 280-310.
- Travis, Lisa. 2010. Inner Aspect: the Articulation of VP . Springer.

- Vendler, Zeno, 1967. "Verbs and Times". *Linguistics in Philosophy*, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y.
- Verkuyl, Henk. 1972. *On the Compositional Nature of the Aspect*. Dordrecht: Reidel.
- Verkuyl, Henk. 1993. *A Theory of Aspectuality: The Interaction between Temporal and A temporal Structure*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Verkuyl, Henk. 1989. Aspectual Classes and Aspectual Composition. *Linguistics and Philosophy*. 1989, 12:39-94.
- Verkuyl, Henk. 1999. Tense, Aspect and Aspectual Composition. In *Topics in South-Slavic Syntax and Semantics*, L. Hellan and M. Dimitrova-Vulchanove (eds.), 123-162. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
- Vlach, Frank. 1981. "The Semantics of the Progressive", in P.J. Tdeschi and A.E. Zaenen, eds., *Syntax and Semantics*, Vol. 14: *Tense and Aspect*, pp. 271-292. NewYork: Academic Press.
- Von, Wright and Georg, Henrik. 1963. *Norm and Action: A Logical Inquiry*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul.
- Wáng, William S.Y. 1965. Two Aspect Markers in Chinese. *Language* 1963,41:457-470.
- Wáng, Futang et al. 1989. *HanYu Fangyan zihui*. Beijing, Wenzhi GaiGe Publishing House.
- Wáng, Futang et al. 1995. *HanYu FanYan CiHui*. Beijing, Yuwen Publishing House.

- Wilhelm, Andrea. 2006. *Telicity and Durativity: A Study of Aspect in Dëne Sùliné (Chipewyan) and German*. Routledge: New York & London.
- Woo, I-hao. 2012. Marking Telicity in Mandarin Chinese, Paper presented at 2012 Northwest Linguistics Conference (NWLC 2012), Seattle, Washington, April 7-8, 2012.
- Wú, Jiemin. 1982. *Fou ding Fuci 'Bu' he 'Meiyou' Shixi*. *Yuyanxue Niankan*. Zhejiangsheng Yuyanxuehui Bianjibu and Hangzhou Daxue Xuebao Bianjibu.
- Wu, Jiun-Shiung Hunter. 2004. Aspectual Influence on Temporal Relations: Evidence from the Progressive Zai and the Durative Zhe. 16th North American Conference.
- Wǔ, Yunji. 1994. Changsha Fangyan de dongtai zhuci. *Fangyan*. 1994. 3-46.
- Wǔ, Yunji. 1996. *Aspectual Markers in Hunan Dialects--Hunan FangYan di DongTai Zhuci*, Hunan Normal University Press.
- Wǔ, Yunji. 1999. *The Development of Aspectual Systems in the Chinese-Xiang Dialects*. Paris, CRLAO.
- Wǔ, Yunji (2005). *A synchronic and diachronic study of the grammar of the Chinese Xiang dialects*. Trends in linguistics. 162. Berlin, New York: Walter de Gruyter.
- Xuān, Yu è. 2008. *Wanjie duanyu jiaS\she he Hanyu xuhua jieguo buyu de jufa wenti*. Dissertation. Peking University.

- Yeh, Meng. 1993. 'The Stative Situation and the Imperfective Zhe in Mandarin'. *Journal Chinese Language Teachers Association*. 1993,1:69-98
- Yǒng, Shin. 1993. The Aspectual Phenomena of the BA Construction. PhD dissertation. University of Wisconsin, Madison.
- Yú Guangzhong. 1986. "Shui Hu QuanZhuan" Ju Mo de 'zai zhe(la) li' kao. *Zhongguo Yuwen*. 1986.1
- Yu án, Jiahua. 1962. *Hanyu Fangyan GaiYao*. Beijing, Wenzhi GaiGe publishing house.
- Zhāng, Bohui,. 1993. *On Language and Dialects*. Guangzhou: Guangdong People's Press.
- Zhōu, Zhenhe and Rujie You. 1986. *Dialects and Chinese culture*. Shanghai: Shanghai People's Press.
- Zhōu, Minglang. 1998. Tense/Aspect Markers in Mandarin and Xiang Dialects, and Their Contact. Sino-Platonic Papers number 83.

**Samenvatting in het Nederlands (Summary in Dutch)**

Deze dissertatie onderzoekt de morfosyntaxis van het aspectstelsel van het Chángshā dialect van het Xiāng Chinees. Xiāng is een van de tien subfamilies van het Chinees (naast Xiāng zijn dit het Mandarijn, Gà, Wú, Yuè, Hakka, Mǐn, Pínghuà, Jīn en Huī). Ik presenteer een volledige beschrijving en analyse van het aspectstelsel van het Chángshā Xiāng dialect. Deze analyse is gebaseerd op algemene theorieën over “Inner” en “Outer” aspect, en de interactie daartussen, met het doel bij te dragen aan verdere ontwikkeling van deze algemene theorieën.

Het meeste werk dat is verschenen over aspect in het Xiāng betreft een vergelijking tussen het Mandarijn en het Xiāng, en gaat niet in op de exacte eigenschappen van dit aspectstelsel vanuit een meer algemeen perspectief. Een voorbeeld is het uitdrukken van aspectuele betekenis. Er is weinig aandacht geweest voor het feit dat één aspect-markeerder gebruikt kan worden voor meerdere betekenissen of dat soms meerdere aspect-markeerders nodig zijn om één betekenis uit te drukken. Daarom willen wij het aspectstelsel van het Chángshā (en Xiāng in het algemeen) beter beschrijven en dieper analyseren.

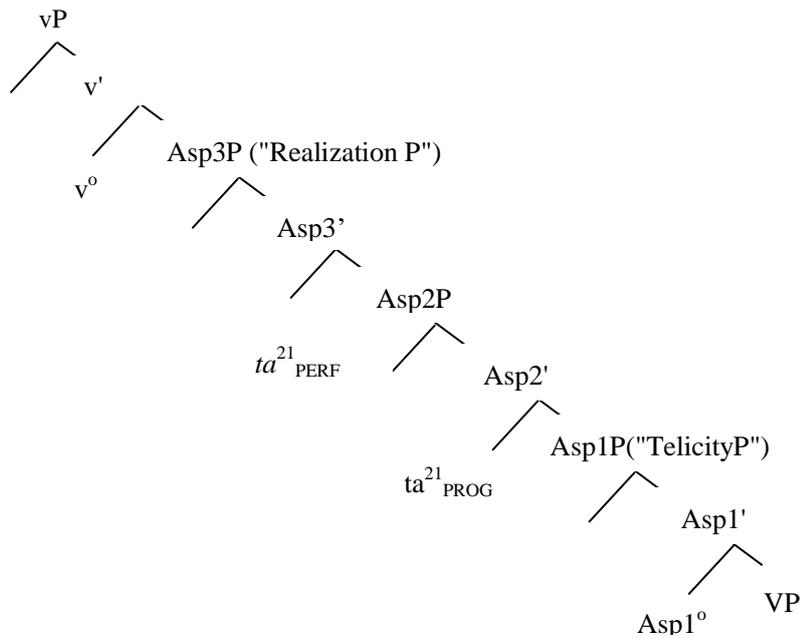
In deze dissertatie ga ik dieper in op twee aspect-partikels,  $ta^{21}$  en  $ka^{41}$ . De eerste van deze twee partikels wordt gebruikt voor de realisatie van twee aspect-types die meestal als verschillend gezien worden: imperfectief (of zelfs progressief) aspect en perfectief aspect. Het tweede partikel,  $ka^{41}$ , wordt meestal als perfectief partikel beschouwd, maar wordt meestal vergezeld door  $ta^{21}$ .

Op basis van deze observaties formuleer ik de volgende onderzoeksvragen in mijn dissertatie:

- a) Wat is de distributie en interpretatie van  $ta^{21}$ ?
- b) Hoe kunnen we verklaren dat in het Xiāng, of in ieder geval in het dialect van Chángshā, hetzelfde partikel gebruikt kan worden om verschillende soorten aspectuele betekenis uit te drukken?
- c) Wat is de distributie en interpretatie van  $ka^{41}$ ?

Ik geef eerst een analyse van de distributie en interpretatie van  $ta^{21}$ . Er zijn twee partikels die dezelfde morfologische vorm hebben:  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  en  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ . Het eerste partikel markeert een perfectief en de tweede vorm markeert progressief aspect. Ik geef aan hoe  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  en  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  onderscheiden kunnen worden: het verschil tussen de twee is dat  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  syntactisch hoger gesitueerd is dan  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ .  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  betreft “Inner” aspect maar wordt geïnterpreteerd in “Outer” aspect;  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  bezet ook een positie in “Inner” aspect, maar lager dan  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  (ik werk binnen Sybesma’s 2017 framework, waarin drie niveaus van Inner aspect aangenomen worden), zoals in (1):

(1)



In mijn analyse volg ik Tsai (2008) in de aannames dat (i) een *event*-variabele syntactisch gelicenseerd moet worden; (ii) syntactische verankering van *tense* een manier is om de *event*-variabele te licenseren; in het Engels is *tense* (T) overtuigend en daarom is T sterk genoeg om de *event*-variabele te licenseren terwijl in het Mandarijn T hiervoor te zwak is; om een effectieve licenser te zijn moet T op de een of andere wijze geassisteerd worden.

In de geest van Tsais werk stel ik voor dat, hoewel  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  zelf niet fysiek aanwezig is in “Outer” aspect, dit partikel wel in relatie staat tot “Outer” aspect, zodat het T kan versterken zodat T de *event*-variabele kan licenseren. Dit verklaart waarom  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  alleen kan staan, of, met andere woorden, waarom het geen ander materiaal nodig heeft. Dit is niet het geval voor  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ , dat lager is gesitueerd dan  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ . Omdat dit partikel verder weg staat van “Outer” aspect en geblokkeerd wordt door perfectief aspect, kan het T niet versterken, met als gevolg dat het *event*-argument niet gelicenseerd kan worden. Om de zin grammaticaal te maken zijn andere elementen nodig om T te helpen in zijn functie van licenser. Dit verklaart waarom  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  altijd vergezeld moet worden door ander materiaal, en  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  niet. Ander materiaal zoals modale werkwoorden/negatie, andere aspectuele markeerders, *event* coordinatie, *event* subordinatie, en counterfactuals, genoemd door Tsai, zijn ook mogelijk in het Chángshā. Zie de voorbeelden in (2).

- (2) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
       3SG NEG kijken PROG TV  
       'Hij kijkt geen TV.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
       3SG kijken PERF TV  
       'Hij heeft geen TV gekeken.'

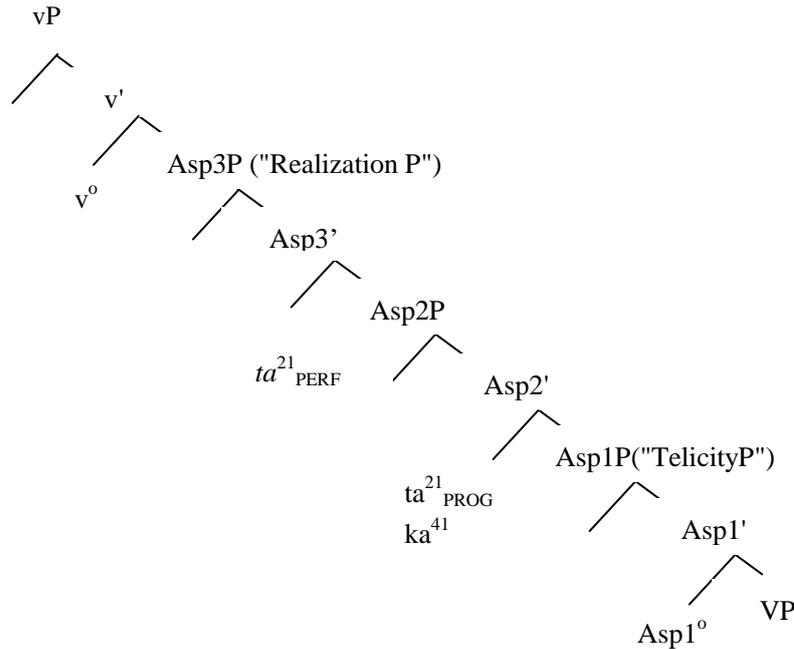
In (2a) kan  $ta^{21}$  alleen als progressief geïnterpreteerd worden, terwijl in (2b), waar de negatie ontbreekt, geen interpretatie van progressief aspect mogelijk is. Zoals we opgemerkt hebben, is de interpretatie van (2a) niet eenvoudig te verklaren indien  $ta^{21}$  alleen als een markeerder van het perfectief opgevat wordt: het is dan niet duidelijk waarom in een negatieve constructie de perfectief-markeerder een progressieve betekenis krijgt (en, vanuit een oogpunt van de Chinese taalkunde in het algemeen, waarom de perfectief-markeerder überhaupt aanwezig is, aangezien deze normaliter in complementaire distributie met negatie verschijnt). Nu we  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  en  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  onderscheiden hebben, kan de observatie in (2a) inzichtelijk verklaard worden: in (2a) wordt  $ta^{21}$  als een progressief-markeerder gebruikt. De negatie mau<sup>21</sup> ‘niet hebben’ kan het *event* argument licenseren (Tsai 2008:681).

Naast het idee dat  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  een progressief-markeerder is die één van de Inner aspect posities bezet, wijs ik op het feit dat er nog een andere progressief-markeerder is in het Xiāng, namelijk in Outer aspect positie. Er zijn dus twee progressief-markeeders: de ene is  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  en de andere is het preverbale  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ . Het verschil tussen  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  en  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  is dat de eerste in Inner, en de tweede in Outer aspect gesitueerd is. Het gebruik van  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  resulteert in een betekenis van aan de gang zijn, terwijl  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  zowel aan de gang zijn als continuering aanduidt. Een ander verschil is dat  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  altijd vergezeld moet worden door ander lexicaal materiaal en  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  niet.

Zoals vermeld werd  $ka^{41}$  in eerder onderzoek beschouwd als een markeerder van het perfectief. In deze dissertatie wordt echter gesteld dat  $ka^{41}$  niet als zodanig gezien moet worden. Het belangrijkste argument hiervoor is dat de distributie van dit partikel aan veel meer beperkingen onderhevig is: het verschijnt bijvoorbeeld alleen in de context van telische gebeurtenissen. Mijn suggestie is dat  $ka^{41}$ , vanuit een descriptief oogpunt, een reeds aanwezig eindpunt verdubbelt, zodat het dit eindpunt definitief maakt. Op basis van dit inzicht onderzoek ik de mogelijkheid om  $ka^{41}$  niet als perfectief-markeerder te beschouwen, maar om dit in de positie te situeren die als  $\text{Asp}2^0$  (de “phase complement” positie) aangeduid wordt in de boomstructuur in het voorstel van Sybesma (2017), zoals in (1) (herhaald in (3)), waar er drie aspectuele lagen zijn:  $\text{Asp}1\text{P}$ , welke teliciteit aanduidt;  $\text{Asp}3\text{P}$ , welke aangeeft of een gebeurtenis wel of niet is gerealiseerd. Indien  $\text{Asp}2\text{P}$  gevuld is, is dit om zeker te stellen dat het proces dat voorafgaat aan het eindpunt in het hoofd van  $\text{Asp}1\text{P}$  niet beschikbaar is voor verdere syntactische operaties. Merk echter op dat ik ook stel dat de functie van  $\text{Asp}2\text{P}$  in het Chángshā niet afhankelijk is van of deze leeg of gevuld is, maar ook waarmee het gevuld is. Dit kan een element zijn dat de gebeurtenis onzichtbaar maakt voor syntactische operaties, maar het kan ook een tegengestelde functie hebben, namelijk door aan te geven dat een actie gepresenteerd wordt als aan de gang. Twee van zulke elementen verschijnen in het Chángshā:  $ka^{41}$  wordt gebruikt om verdere toegang tot de activiteit voor het lexicale eindpunt te blokkeren (bijvoorbeeld, een dergelijke gebeurtenis kan geen progressief aspect dragen), terwijl  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  de activiteit in kwestie onderstreept en aangeeft dat de gebeurtenis aan de gang is.  $ka^{41}$  en

$ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  bezetten dezelfde positie en komen nooit samen voor, zoals (3) laat zien:

(3)



De voorbeelden in (4) laten zien dat  $ka^{41}$  gebruikt wordt om een eindpunt te verdubbelen en te verhinderen dat het proces dat voorafgaat aan het eindpunt in het hoofd van Asp1 een rol kan spelen in verdere syntactische operaties.

- (4) a.  $t^h a^{33}$   $t\check{c}ia^{24}$  ( $ka^{41}$ )  $ta^{21}$   $san^{33}$   $t\check{s}a^{24}$   $pin^{13}$   $ko^{41}$  .  
 3SG eten KA PERF drie CL appel  
 'Hij heeft drie appels gegeten.'
- b.  $t^h a^{33}$   $pa^{41}$   $san^{33}$   $t\check{s}a^{24}$   $pin^{13}ko^{41}$   $t\check{c}ia^{24}$  \* ( $ka^{41}$ )  $ta^{21}$  .  
 3SG BA drie CL appel eten KA PERF  
 'Hij heeft drie appels gegeten.'
- c. Tsansan  $xy^{33}$  { $ka^{41} ta^{21} / *(ka^{41}) ta^{21}$ } .  
 verliezen KA PERF  
 'Tsansan heeft (het spel) verloren.'

In (4a)  $ka^{41}$  is optioneel, terwijl in (4b) en (4c)  $ka^{41}$  verplicht is. We verklaren het verschil tussen (4a) en (4b-c) op basis van het gebruik van  $ka^{41}$ :  $ka^{41}$  is verplicht in de *ba*-constructie (4b) en in de resultatief (4c), maar niet in *accomplishments with a bounded object* (4a).

Het antwoord hangt samen met de eigenschappen van de constructies in deze gevallen. Merk op dat in *accomplishments with a bounded object* en resultatieven het eindpunt compositioneel is, terwijl het in prestaties inherent is. In veel talen, waaronder het Mandarijn en het Chángshā, is het mogelijk om voor *accomplishments with bounded objects* of resultatief-constructies progressief aspect te gebruiken (zoals (5) laat zien), maar is het onmogelijk om prestaties op die manier te presenteren. Deze eindpunten kunnen niet verwijderd worden. Als een predicaat zonder eindpunt onmogelijk is, is  $ka^{41}$  verplicht.

- (5) a.  $t^h a^{33}$   $tsai^{21} ko^{24}$   $t^h an^{45}$   $t\phi^h \text{ən}^{33}$   $i^{33} fu$ .  
 3SG PROG strijken plat clothes  
 'Hij strijkt de kleren plat.'
- b.  $t^h \bar{a}$   $tsai^{21} ko^{24}$   $f\bar{a}^{24}$   $t\bar{ən}^{21}$   $t^h \bar{a}$   $ti$   $t\phi i^{45} t\phi^h \text{ə}^{33}$ .  
 3SG PROG starten rijden 3SG SUB auto  
 'Hij start de auto.'

Het gebruik van de *ba*-constructie hier is veelzeggend. Hoewel het eindpunt niet inherent is, in de zin van een prestatie, is de aanwezigheid van *ba* hier structureel noodzakelijk: zonder eindpunt is er geen *ba*-constructie. En net als bij prestaties, maar niet bij *non-ba*-constructies, kunnen *ba*-zinnen niet met progressief aspect verschijnen. Het eindpunt kan niet onderdrukt worden en  $ka^{41}$  is verplicht aanwezig. In alle andere gevallen kan het eindpunt, dat wel aanwezig is, onderdrukt worden en is  $ka^{41}$  niet verplicht.

Tenslotte wijs ik erop dat in Chángshā (en Xiāng in het algemeen) alle drie de Inner aspect posities lexicaal gerealiseerd kunnen worden.  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  bezet Asp3<sup>o</sup>;  $ka^{41}$  en  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  bezetten Asp2<sup>o</sup>, en een lexicale resultatief zou in de Asp1<sup>o</sup> positie gerealiseerd kunnen worden.

Het primaire belang van deze dissertatie ligt in de beschrijving en analyse van aspect in het Xiāng, maar ook in de meer algemene zin dat het

analyses ondersteunt waarin Inner aspect een rol speelt. Verder bevestigt deze dissertatie de opvatting dat niet alle Chinese talen hetzelfde zijn. Hoewel de basis van de analyse hetzelfde is, worden de posities in de structuur op verschillende wijzen gerealiseerd. Hoewel, bij wijze van voorbeeld, het Mandarijn een *phase complement* heeft, heeft het geen element vergelijkbaar met *ka*<sup>41</sup> in het Xiāng. En terwijl het Xiāng een element heeft dat zowel perfectief als progressief/duratief kan uitdrukken, gebruikt het Mandarijn daarvoor twee elementen: respectievelijk *le* en *zhe*.



## Summary

This thesis investigates the morpho-syntax of the aspectual system in one variety of Xiāng (namely: Chángshā), which is one of the ten sub-families of Chinese (which are Mandarin, Xiāng, Gàn, Wú, Yuè, Hakka, Mǐn, Pínghuà, Jīn, and Huī). In this context, I provide a comprehensive description and analysis of the aspect system of the Xiāng variety of Chángshā. I conduct the analysis from the perspective of general theories on Inner and Outer aspect, and the interaction between them, with the intention to contribute to the development of these more general ideas.

Most of the previous works on aspect in Xiāng are concerned with the comparison of the differences between Mandarin and Xiāng, rather than recognizing the idiosyncratic properties in a more general sense or in their own right. Take the expression of aspectual meaning as an example. That one aspect marker is used to express more than one meaning or that more than one element is sometimes needed to express an aspect type has aroused very little attention. It is our purpose to provide an analytical account of the aspectual system in Chángshā (and Xiāng more generally).

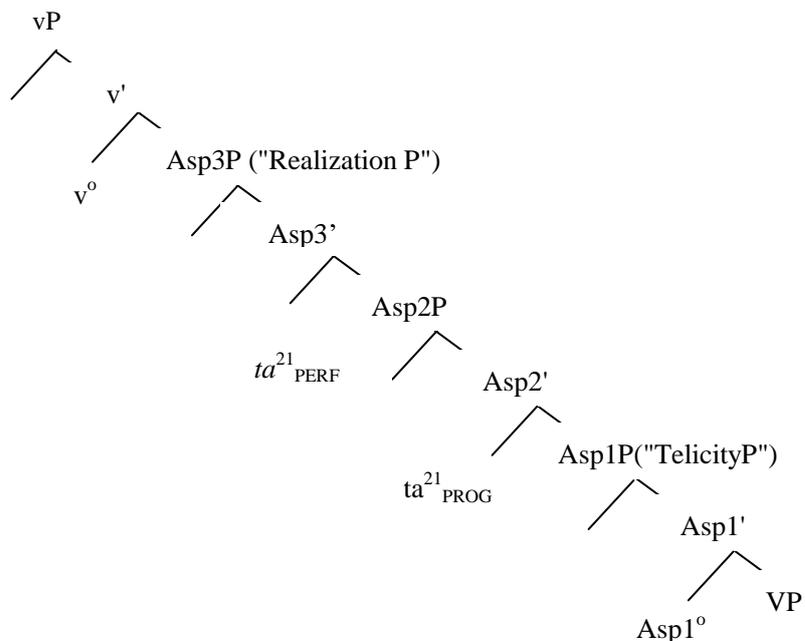
In this thesis, I focus my investigating on two aspect particles,  $ta^{21}$  and  $ka^{41}$ . The former,  $ta^{21}$ , is involved in the expression of two types of aspect, which are normally thought of as quite different, imperfective (or even progressive), and perfective; the latter,  $ka^{41}$ , is a particle that is often characterized as a perfective particle, but most of the time it is accompanied by  $ta^{21}$ .

In view of these observations, I formulate the following questions to be dealt with in this thesis:

- a) What is the interpretation and distribution of  $ta^{21}$ ?
- b) How can we account for the observation that in Xiāng, or in any case in the Chángshā variety of it, that the same particle can be involved in the expression of different aspectual meanings?
- c) What is the interpretation and distribution of  $ka^{41}$ ?

I first provide an analysis of the interpretation and distribution of  $ta^{21}$ . I point out that there are two particles which share the same morphological form:  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ , the former is a perfective and the latter is a progressive marker. I then provide an analysis to disambiguate  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  from  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  by pointing out that the difference between  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  lies in the fact that  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  is syntactically higher than  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ .  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  is located in an Inner aspect position but interpreted in Outer aspect;  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is also located in Inner aspect position, lower than  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  (I adopt Sybesma's (2017) structure that involves three layers in Inner aspect, as in (1)).

(1)



In my analysis, I follow Tsai (2008), in assuming that i) an event variable needs to be syntactically licensed; ii) syntactic tense anchoring is a way of licensing the event variable; in English, tense (hence T) being overt, is strong enough to license the event variable, while in Mandarin, it is too weak to do so; to be an effective licenser, T needs to be supported one way or another.

In the spirit of Tsai's work, I propose that  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$ , though not physically in Outer aspect itself, is in a relation with Outer aspect such that it can strengthen T so that the latter can license the event variable. This explains why  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$  can stand alone in the sense that it need not be accompanied by other material. This is different for  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$ .  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  is located lower than  $ta^{21}_{PERF}$ . Since it is too far away from Outer aspect, blocked by the perfective aspect, it cannot strengthen T as a result of which the event argument is not licensed ("brought out" in Tsai's terms). Note that even if the head position of the highest AspP in inner aspect is not filled, the position/projection is still there. To salvage the sentence, other elements need to be present to help T to do its

licensing job. That explains why  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is always accompanied by other material, unlike  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ . Other material, like modals/negation, certain aspectual markers, event coordination, event subordination, counterfactuals mentioned by Tsai also work with the use of  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  in Chángshā. This is illustrated in (2).

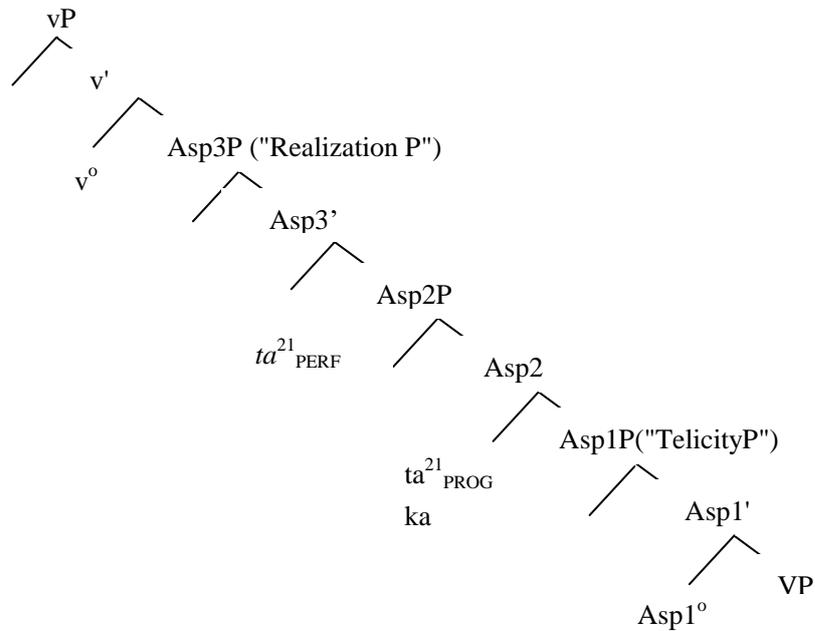
- (2) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> mau<sup>21</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
       3SG NEG watch PROG TV  
       'He is not watching TV.'  
   b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> k<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> tiən<sup>45</sup>si<sup>41</sup>.  
       3SG watch PERF TV  
       'He watched TV.'

$ta^{21}$  in (2a) can only have a progressive reading, while in (2b), without the negative marker, the progressive reading is not available. As we noted, if  $ta^{21}$  is exclusively treated as a perfective marker, the interpretation of (2a) is not easy to explain: it is not clear why in a negative construction the perfective marker must produce the progressive meaning (and in the greater context of Chinese linguistics it is not clear why the perfective marker would still be there at all, since it is generally in complementary distribution with the negative marker). Now that we have distinguished  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  from  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$ , the observation in (2a) can be nicely accounted for. That is, in (2a),  $ta^{21}$  is used as a progressive marker. The negative marker  $mau^{21}$  'not have' can license the event argument (Tsai 2008:681).

Aside from arguing that  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is a progressive marker occupying one of the Inner aspect positions, I point out that there is another progressive marker, in Outer aspect position. That is, we have two progressive markers in Xiāng. One is  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$ , the other is the preverbal  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ . What differentiates  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  from  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  is that the latter is located in Outer aspect, while  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  is in an Inner aspect position.  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$  focuses on the meaning of ongoingness, while  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  focuses on the meaning of both ongoingness and continuation. Another difference is that, unlike  $tsai^{21}ko^{24}$ ,  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  must always be accompanied by other material.

As mentioned,  $ka^{41}$  was treated as a perfective marker in the previous literature. In the present thesis however, it is argued that  $ka^{41}$  should not be treated as a perfective marker. The main reason is that its distribution is much more restricted: it only appears in telic events, to give one example. I suggest that descriptively,  $ka^{41}$  doubles the already existing endpoint and that it does so to make the endpoint definitive. Given the function of  $ka^{41}$ , instead of treating  $ka^{41}$  as a perfective marker, I explore the possibility of locating it in the position labeled as  $Asp2^0$  in the tree structure (the “phase complement” position) using the frame work from Sybesma (2017), as in (1), repeated in (3), where there are three aspect layers:  $Asp1P$ , indicating telicity;  $Asp3P$ , indicating whether an event is realized or not. The function of  $Asp2P$ , if filled, is to make sure that the process that precedes the endpoint in the head of  $Asp1$  is not available for further syntactic operations. Note, however, that I also point out that the function of  $Asp2P$  in Chángshā relies not on whether it is filled (or not), but (also) by what it is filled with. It can be an element that is used to block the event from being syntactically accessible, but it can also be an element which is, on the contrary, used to indicate that an action presented is ongoing. It happens that two such elements are observed in Chángshā.  $ka^{41}$  is used to block further access to the activity preceding the lexical endpoint (for example, such event cannot be present in the progressive), while  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$  in contrast focuses on the activity in question and indicates that the action presented is ongoing.  $ka^{41}$  occupies the same position as  $ta^{21}_{PROG}$ . These two markers never co-occur, see (3). What is different is that  $ka^{41}$  is added to (3).

(3)



That *ka*<sup>41</sup> is used to double an end point and make sure that the process that precedes the endpoint in the head of Asp1 is not available for further syntactic operations is illustrated in (4).

- (4) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tɕia<sup>24</sup> (ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup> san<sup>33</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> pin<sup>13</sup> ko<sup>41</sup> .  
 3SG eat KA PERF three CL apple  
 'He ate three apples.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> pa<sup>41</sup> san<sup>33</sup> tsa<sup>24</sup> pin<sup>13</sup>ko<sup>41</sup> tɕia<sup>24</sup> \*(ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup> .  
 3SG BA three CL apple eat KA PERF  
 'He ate three apples.'
- c. Tsansan xy<sup>33</sup> {ka<sup>41</sup> ta<sup>21</sup> / \*(ka<sup>41</sup>) ta<sup>21</sup> } .  
 lose KA PERF KA PERF  
 'Tsansan lost (the game).'

$ka^{41}$  in (4a) is optional, while in (4b) and (4c),  $ka^{41}$  is obligatory. We have to explain the difference between (4a) and (4b)-(4c) in terms of the use of  $ka^{41}$ , where  $ka^{41}$  is obligatory in the *BA*-construction (4b) and achievements (4c), but not in accomplishments with a bounded object (4a).

The answer is related to the properties of constructions in these cases. Note that in accomplishments with a bounded object and resultatives, the endpoint is compositional, while in achievements it is inherent. Note that, in many languages, including Mandarin and Chángshā, it is possible to present accomplishments with bounded objects or resultative constructions in the progressive (as illustrated in (5)), but it is impossible to present achievements in the progressive. These endpoints cannot be stripped off. When it is impossible to have the predicate without the endpoint,  $ka^{41}$  is obligatory.

- (5) a. t<sup>h</sup>a<sup>33</sup> tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup> t<sup>h</sup>an<sup>45</sup> tɕ<sup>h</sup>ən<sup>33</sup> i<sup>33</sup>fu.  
       3SG PROG iron flat clothes  
       'He is ironing the clothes flat.'
- b. t<sup>h</sup>ā tsai<sup>21</sup>ko<sup>24</sup> fā<sup>24</sup> tən<sup>21</sup> t<sup>h</sup>ā ti tɕi<sup>45</sup>tɕ<sup>h</sup>ə<sup>33</sup>.  
       3SG PROG start move 3SG SUB car  
       'He is starting his car.'

The *BA*-construction is telling here. Although the endpoint is not inherent in the sense it is in achievements, in this case the presence is required structurally: without an endpoint, there is no *BA*-construction. And just like achievements, but unlike their non-*BA*-counterparts, *BA*-sentences are incompatible with the progressive. The endpoint cannot be lifted and  $ka^{41}$  is obligatory. In all other cases the endpoint, although it is there, can be lifted and  $ka^{41}$  is not obligatory.

In the end, I point out that in Chángshā and Xiāng in general, all three Inner aspect positions can be lexically realized.  $ta^{21}_{\text{PERF}}$  occupies Asp3<sup>o</sup>;  $ka^{41}$  and  $ta^{21}_{\text{PROG}}$  occupies Asp2<sup>o</sup>; and a lexical result predicate may be located in Asp1<sup>o</sup> position.

The significance of this thesis is meant to lie in the description and analysis of aspect in Xiāng, but also more generally in that it will support the analyses in which Inner aspect plays a role. Furthermore, the thesis underscores the claim that Chinese languages are not all the same. Although the basic structure is the

same, the way the different positions in the structure are realized is different. For instance, although Mandarin has “phase complements” to fill Asp2<sup>0</sup>, it does not have an element like Xiāng *ka*<sup>41</sup>. Also, whereas this language has one element that can express both perfective and progressive/durative aspect, *ta*<sup>21</sup>, Mandarin uses two different elements for these purposes, *le* and *zhe* respectively.

### Summary in Chinese/中文摘要

本研究旨在调查湘方言变体（具体说长沙方言）体貌的形态和句法特征。前者是汉语十大方言（普通话、赣、湘、吴、粤、客家、闽、平话以及徽语）。在这样一个背景之下，我们对湘语长沙话的体貌进行了全面的描写和分析。我们的研究立足于外部体和内部体的一般理论及二者之间的相互作用，目的在于对这些理论做出贡献。

过去关于湘方言体研究的文献大多关注湘语和汉语之间的比较，而不太关注湘语本身或者从更广阔的视角去考察湘语体特征。以体貌意义的表达为例。湘方言广泛出现的同一个体标记被用来表示一种以上的意义，或者一个以上的体标记用来表示同一种体貌意义这样的现象很少受到人们的关注。我们的研究目的在于对长沙方言（更广泛意义上而言，湘方言）的体貌系统中这种特质进行分析和解释，并进而对整个湘语体貌系统进行全面的分析和研究。

本研究中，我们主要关于两个体标记词  $ta^{21}$  和  $ka^{41}$ ，分别记作“哒”和“咖”的用法。“哒”能用来表示两种不同的体意义：完成体和非完成体；“咖”常被认为是一个完成体标记，但大多数时候常常需要和“哒”搭配使用，否则会引起不合语法现象。

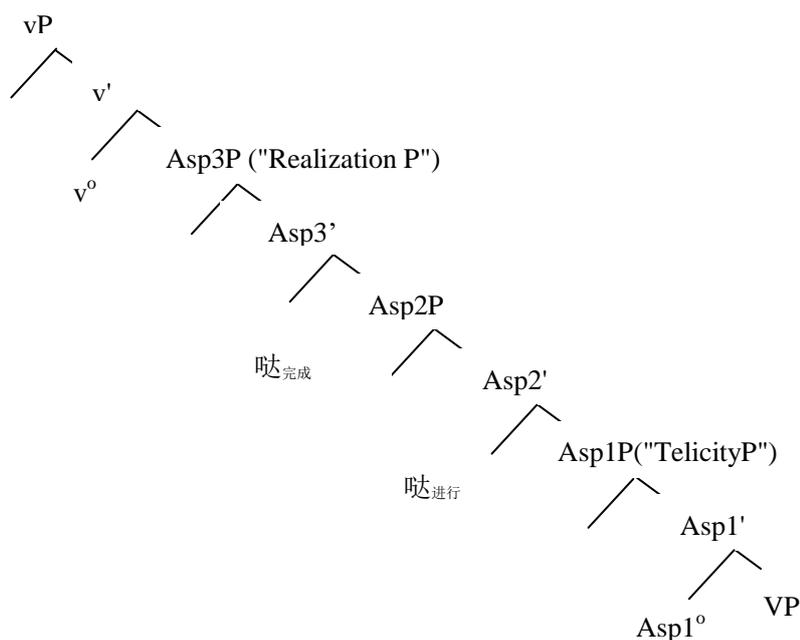
根据这些观察，我们在本研究中提出下面这些问题：

- i) “哒”的语义特征和句法分布如何解释？
- ii) 我们如何解释湘方言，或者说长沙方言中，同一个体标记能够用来表示不同的体意义的现象？
- iii) 我们如何解释“咖”的语义特征和句法分布？

研究中，我们首先对“哒”的语义特征和句法分布进行分析。与传统方法不同，我们指出有两个体标记，共享同一个形式。我们将其区分为“哒<sub>完成体</sub>”和“哒<sub>进行体</sub>”，前者是一个完成体标记，后者是一个进行体标记。然后，我们分析指出“哒<sub>完成体</sub>”和“哒<sub>进行体</sub>”的区别在于表示完成体意义的“哒”句法位置高于表示进行体意义的“哒”，并由此解释，“哒”在哪些情况下表示完成体意义，在哪些情况下，“哒”表示进行体意义。“哒<sub>完成体</sub>”位于内部体位置，但是在外部体位置获得语义解释；“哒<sub>进行体</sub>”同样位于内部体位置，不过，低于“哒<sub>完成体</sub>”。分析过程中，我们主要借用 Sybesma's (2017) 关于汉语体貌系统的理论，后者认为汉语

内部体是一个三层次的结构。我们指出，这一点上，长沙方言与汉语是一致的。根据 Sybesma's (2017) 汉语体貌内部体结构表示如 (1)。

(1)



在我们的分析中，我们同时也借用 Tsai (2008)的一些看法，认为， i) 事件变量需要在句法上获得允准。ii) 句法意义上的时制锚定是允准事件变量的方式之一。英语的时制具有显性的形态标记，其本身很“强”，可以允准事件变量；而汉语普通话里，没有显性的时制标记，相对来说，其时制比较“弱”，不能用来充当有效允准语，因此汉语时制需要其他方式来得到允准。

在上述这些理论基础上，我们提出，“哒<sub>完成体</sub>”尽管没有处于外部体位置，但是与外部体之间关系密切，事实上它在外外部体上获得语义解释，因此它能够用来加强时制，以便后者能够允准事件变量。这可以解释为什么“哒<sub>完成体</sub>”能够独立使用，而不需要其他成分搭配。这一点上，“哒<sub>进行体</sub>”与“哒<sub>完成体</sub>”不同。“哒<sub>进行体</sub>”的句法位置比“哒<sub>完成体</sub>”低。由于其离外部体太远，中间受到完成体的阻挡，因此不能用来“加强”时制，以便事件论元获得允准（或

者用 Tsai (2008) 的话来说, 无法得到“拼读”)。值得说明的是, 即使内部体中最高位置上的中心语没有被填充 (或者说投射), 这个位置依然存在。为了使句子合法, 我们需要借助其他的成分来帮助时制完成允准事件变量的工作。这就解释了为什么“哒<sub>进行体</sub>”不能与“哒<sub>完成体</sub>”一样独立使用, 而总是需要其他成分搭配使用。Tsai (2008) 所提到情态动词、否定动词、体标记词、并列事件、从属事件等所有这些用来帮助句子实现时制锚定的方法在长沙方言都同样有效, 也正是这些成分的出现, 长沙方言中“哒<sub>进行体</sub>”才能实现其进行体标记功能。具体例句见 (2)。

- (2) a. 他有看哒电视。他没在看电视。  
b. 他看哒电视。 他看了电视。

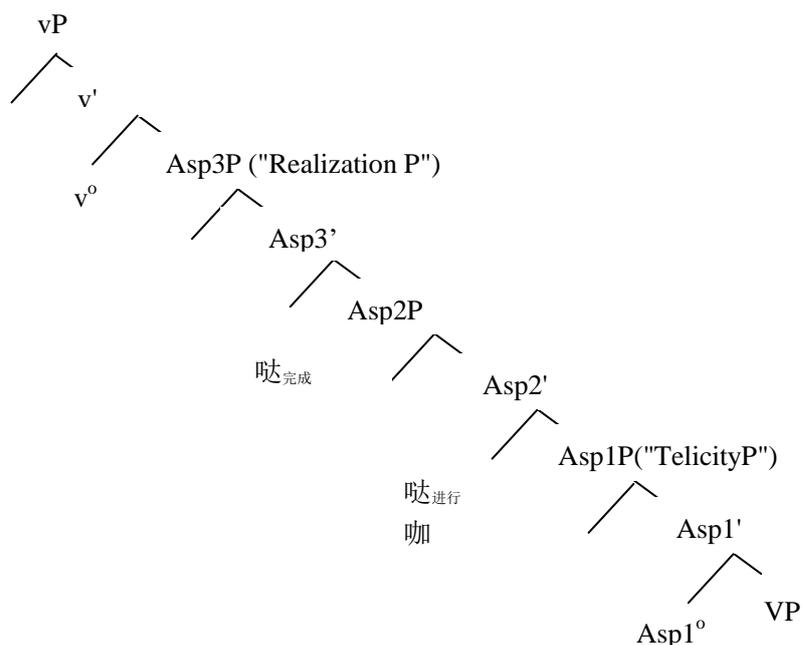
“哒”在 (2a) 里只能表示进行体语义。而在 (2b) 里, 句子中没有出现否定副词, 句子不能表示动作正在进行的意义。正如我们已经提到的那样, 如果我们一律将“哒”看作是一个完成体标记, (2a) 的语义特征很难解释。我们不清楚为什么含否定副词的结构里, 一个完成体标记必须产生进行体意义 (并且从汉语来看, 我们更不清楚为什么完成体标记能够出现在这个句子中, 因为一般情况下完成体与否定副词呈互补分布。) 现在我们将“哒<sub>进行体</sub>”和“哒<sub>完成体</sub>”区分开来, (2a) 中的观察也就完全能得到合理解释。具体说, 该句子中“哒”根本就不是一个完成体标记, 而是一个进行体标记。否定标记“有”能够允准事件论元 (Tsai 2008:681)。

除了提出“哒<sub>进行体</sub>”可以用作进行体标记, 位于内部体位置之外, 我们认为长沙方言外部体中, 还存在另一个进行体标记: “在咯”, 后者位于动词前位置。这也就是说, 湘方言中存在两个进行体标记, 一个是“哒<sub>进行体</sub>”, 另一个是动词前“在咯”。二者之间存在一定的句法和语义差异。“在咯”位于外部体位置; 而“哒<sub>进行体</sub>”位于内部体位置。“在咯”着重表示动作正在进行; 而“哒<sub>进行体</sub>”同时关注进行意义和持续意义。另外, 与“在咯”不同, “哒<sub>进行体</sub>”总是需要其他成分搭配使用。

前面已经提到, 在先前文献中, “咖”也被当作一个完成体标记。而在我们的研究中, 我们认为“咖”不应该看作是一个完成体标记。主要原因是, “咖”的句法分布与“哒”相比更为复杂。例如, “咖”一般出现在终结点事件中。本研究中, 我们提出, “咖”用来“加倍” (Double) 终结点意义, 使终结点意义明确、具体 (Definitive)。鉴于“咖”的这个作用, 我们没有将“咖”看作是一个完成体标记, 而是将其看作一个内部体标记。在 Sybesma (2017)

基础上，我们提出“咖”位于内部体结构上 Asp2<sup>0</sup>（也就是人们常说的“阶段体”）位置。（1）重复如（3），不同的是，（3）里增加了“咖”。

(3)



在这个结构图上，内部体有三个层次：Asp1P 表示终结点意义，Asp3P 表示一个事件是否已经实现。Asp2P 的功能相对来说比较复杂。其具体意义取决于该位置是否被填充。如果被填充，那么 Asp2P 表示 Asp1 里的中心语所表示的终结点不能再进行进一步的句法操作。否则，则可以。但是值得说明的是，我们同时指出，这一点上，长沙方言与汉语不同。在长沙方言中 Asp2P 的作用不仅取决于是否被填充，而且还取决于填充的具体成分。这个位置上所填充的成分可以用来阻挡进一步的句法操作，也可以是用来表示动作正在进行的成分。有意思的是，这两个成分在长沙方言中都有显性词汇表示。其中，“咖”用来阻挡进一步的句法操作；与其相反，“哒进行体”则用来表示所描述的动作正在进行。“咖”与“哒进行体”句法位置相同，二者从来不同时出现（见（3））。

“咖”用来“加倍”(Double)终结点意义,确保其上层中心语里的终结点不能在进行句法操作的这种用法可以通过(4)进行说明。

- (4) a. 他吃 (咖) 哒三只苹果。  
 b. 他把三只苹果吃\* (咖) 哒。  
 c. 这次比赛他输/赢\* (咖) 哒。

“咖”在(4a)里是具有可选性。而在(4b)和(4c)中则必须出现。我们必须解释(4a)与(4b)和(4c)中“咖”的用法。说明为什么“咖”在(4a)这样带有数量宾语的实现体事件中具有可选性,而在(4b)和(4c)中具有强制性。

我们认为这些问题的实质主要与这些结构特征有关。值得注意的是,在结果补语句和带有数量宾语的实现体动词所表示的句子中,事件的终结点是组合性的。而在达成体里,终结点意义却是内含的。同样值得关注的是,在许多其他语言包括普通话和长沙话中,带有数量宾语的实现体动词所表示的句子或结果补语句子可以表示为进行体(见(5)),而达成体动词表示的句子却不能。这些事件中的终结点不能被剥离(Be stripped off)。相对于终结点无法被剥离的句子,“咖”具有强制性。

- (5) a. 他在咯熨衣服。  
 b. 他在咯发动他的汽车。

至于“把”字句,我们认为可以这样解释,尽管这种句式中的终结点意义与达成体动词中固有的终结点意义不一样,但是这种句式的结构本身使然:没有终结点,就没有“把”字结构。与达成体动词一样,但与非“把”字结构不同,“把”字结构与进行体不能兼容。其终结点不能被剥离。这些情形里,“咖”的使用具有强制性。在所有其他情形里,尽管含有终结点意义,但如果能被抽离,“咖”也就具有可选性。

研究最后,我们还指出,大体上来说,湘语长沙方言中内部体里的三个位置在词汇上都具有显性词汇表现。“哒<sub>完成体</sub>”位于 Asp3<sup>0</sup> 位置;“咖”和“哒<sub>进行体</sub>”位于 Asp2<sup>0</sup> 位置;表示结果意义的词汇可能位于 Asp3<sup>0</sup> 位置。

本研究的意义在于,我们对湘语长沙方言的体貌特征进行了描写和分析;而且更广泛意义上来说,本研究为认为内部体在体貌系统中发挥重要作用的分析提供了支持。并且,本研究还强调:汉语不都是一样的。尽管

基本的结构一样,但是同一结构上,不同位置上的句法实现方式并不相同。例如,普通话和湘语长沙方言中,表示“阶段完成”的成分必须在 Asp2° 上,但是普通话里没有湘语中的“咖”。而且湘语中有既表示完成体意义又表示进行/持续意义的“哒”,普通话却分别使用“了”和“着”这两个不同的标记。

**Curriculum Vitae**

Lu Man 鲁曼 was born in Yueyang city Hunan province, on the 16<sup>th</sup> of July 1969. She obtained her BA in Foreign Langue and literature at the university of Science and Technology in Xiangtan in 1993, and then went to the institute of Economy and Trading in Changsha, where she spent three years teaching English. In 1996, she enrolled as a master student in Zhongnan University in Changsha. She defended her MA thesis in translation theory in 1999. Since June 1999, she has been teaching English at the College of Foreign Languages in Hunan University in Changsha. In February 2007, she enrolled in the Master's Program of the Leiden University Center for Linguistics (LUCL) and defended her MA thesis in July 2008. In 2008 she started her PhD research as an external PhD student at LUCL, the results of which are reported in this dissertation.